

# 目录

历年真题 .....	3
湖北理工学院 2015 年英语真题 .....	3
湖北理工学院 2015 年英语真题答案 .....	10
湖北理工学院 2016 年英语真题 .....	12
湖北理工学院 2016 年英语真题答案 .....	21
湖北理工学院 2017 年英语真题 .....	23
湖北理工学院 2017 年英语真题答案 .....	30
湖北理工学院 2018 年真题 .....	32
湖北理工学院 2018 年真题答案 .....	39
湖北理工学院 2018 年真题 2 .....	41
湖北理工学院 2018 年真题 2 答案 .....	49
2020 年湖北省普通专升本英语真题 .....	50
2020 专升本英语答案 .....	58
知识点总结 .....	59
第一章 基础启蒙 .....	59
第一节、 基础词类 .....	59
第二节、 句子成分 .....	60
第三节、 句子种类 .....	61
第二章 词法透析 .....	70
第一节、 名词 .....	70
第二节、 冠词 .....	74
第三节、 数词和量词 .....	77

第四节、 代词 .....	80
第五节、 介词 .....	87
第六节、 形容词和副词 .....	90
第七节、 动词 .....	97
第八节、 连词 .....	125
第三章 句法攻克 .....	127
第一节、 主谓一致 .....	127
第二节、 名词性从句 .....	132
第三节、 定语从句 .....	138
第四节、 状语从句 .....	143
第五节、 虚拟语气 .....	149
第六节、 倒装 .....	154
第七节、 强调句 .....	156
模拟测试 .....	158
2020 届湖北省普通专升本英语模拟试卷（一） .....	158
2020 届湖北省普通专升本英语模拟试卷（二） .....	164
2020 届湖北省普通专升本英语模拟试卷（三） .....	171
2020 届湖北省普通专升本英语模拟试卷（四） .....	178
2020 届湖北省普通专升本英语模拟试卷（五） .....	184
2020 届湖北省普通专升本英语模拟试卷（六） .....	错误!未定义书签。
2020 届湖北省普通专升本英语模拟试卷（七） .....	错误!未定义书签。
2020 届湖北省普通专升本英语模拟试卷（八） .....	错误!未定义书签。
2020 届湖北省普通专升本英语模拟试卷（九） .....	错误!未定义书签。
2020 届湖北省普通专升本英语模拟试卷（十） .....	错误!未定义书签。

# 历年真题

## 湖北理工学院 2015 年英语真题

### Part I Vocabulary and Structure (20 points)

**Directions:** This part is to test your ability to construct grammatically correct sentences.

It consists of 2 sections.

#### Section A (10 points, 0.5 point each)

**Directions:** In this section, there are 20 incomplete sentences. You are required to complete each one by deciding on the most appropriate word or words from the 4 choices marked A), B), C) and D). Then you should mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet with a single line through the center.

1. I will \_\_ one more attempt to close with victory.

- A. do                      B. take                      C. make                      D. try

2. \_\_ three years of lessons, at the end of the camp her coaches told her to forget about singing.

- A. Despite                      B. Because                      C. Though                      D. With

3. He studied at the Academy of Fine Arts in Brussels but dropped \_\_ at 17.

- A. by                      B. off                      C. out                      D. in

4. Jack Black returns to voice Po, a giant panda who has recently found himself \_\_\_\_ as The Dragon Warrior.

- A. name                      B. named                      C. naming                      D. to be named

5. The car a rare space \_\_ which the drivers have total control.

- A. in                      B. at                      C. by                      D. over

6. If you \_\_ come tomorrow, I might have time to see you.

- A. will                      B. are to                      C. should                      D. were to

7. The program also includes a course on automobile sales, which is particularly intended \_\_\_\_ future car dealers.

- A. at                      B. for                      C. in                      D. by

8. I would rather you \_\_ me frankly what you think.

- A. told                      B. tell                      C. tells                      D. telling

9. The climate of Shanghai is better than \_\_\_\_ of Nanjing.

- A. what                      B. it                      C. which                      D. that

10. Words become \_\_ meaning for us by experience.

- A. filled with                      B. filling with                      C. full with                      D. full of

11. In some countries, \_\_\_\_ is called “equality” does not really mean equal rights for all people.

- A. that                      B. what                      C. which                      D. how

12. We were all overjoyed at the news \_\_\_\_ the experiment turned out to be a success.

- A. which                      B. when                      C. that                      D. what

13. If you give up your plan, \_\_\_\_.

- A. so will they                      B. so they do                      C. they will so                      D. so did they

14. Ann prefers watching TV at home \_\_\_\_.

- A. than to go to the cinema                      B. than going to the cinema  
C. than go to the cinema                      D. to going to the cinema

15. Either the boy or his twin brother must have eaten \_\_\_\_ dinner here.

A. his                      B. theirs                      C. their                      D. its

16. I won't pay you today \_\_\_\_\_ you finish the work in time.

A. without                      B. unless                      C. except                      D. don't

17. I just can't understand \_\_\_\_\_ at him. He is only eleven!

A. you why laugh                      B. you to laugh

C. your laughing                      D. you laugh

18. Only when he had done it \_\_\_\_\_ that he had made a mistake.

A. did he realize                      B. he realized

C. he then realized                      D. before he realize

19. It is necessary that he \_\_\_\_\_ to the School of Art. After all he needs some professional instruction.

A. goes                      B. will go                      C. go                      D. has gone

20. I consider him to be the only one of all my friends that \_\_\_\_\_ me.

A. understand                      B. understands                      C. understood                      D. understanding

### Section B (10 points, 1 point each)

**Directions:** *There are 10 incomplete statements here. You should fill in each blank with the proper form of the word given in brackets. Write the word in the corresponding space on the Answer Sheet.*

21. A severe flood \_\_\_\_\_ (strike) the food base of the city.

22. The company is trying to \_\_\_\_\_ (popular) its main products.

23. We can only get through the financial crisis by \_\_\_\_\_ (reduce) our expenses.

24. As her son hadn't yet come home, she became \_\_\_\_\_ (increase) worried.

25. Airplanes \_\_\_\_\_ (able) people to travel great distances rapidly.

26. There is something wrong with the TV set. I must have it \_\_\_\_\_ (check).

27. The plane took off on \_\_\_\_\_ (schedule).

28. Services need to be more \_\_\_\_\_ (effect) organized than they are at present.

29. It became \_\_\_\_\_ (fashion) to eat certain kinds of fish.

30. I shall never forget \_\_\_\_\_ (meet) her on the first day at college.

### Part II Reading Comprehension ( 40 points, 2 points each)

**Directions:** *There are 4 passages in this part. Each passage is followed by some questions. For each of them there are four choices marked A, B, C and D. You should decide on the best choice and mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet with a single line through the center.*

#### Passage 1

The contract of employment is the agreement made between the employer and the employee. This could be a written agreement or in an oral form.

In addition, the contract will also include "custom and practice" agreements. These are how things are usually done in the workplace, for example, if the employer always gives the employees a day's holiday in August. Even though this is not mentioned in the written contract, this will form part of the contract as it is the usual practice.

A trade union may have negotiated (谈判达成) an agreement with an employer about conditions at work. The negotiated agreement will often form part of a contract.

Some contracts will be illegal (不合法的) if:

- \* the employee gets all or part of their wages in cash;
- \* tax and national insurance contributions (国民保险税) are not paid; and
- \* the employee knows they are getting paid in this way to avoid paying national insurance and tax.

31. According to the first paragraph, a contract of employment \_\_\_\_\_ . .

- A) must be a written one
- B) could be in an oral form
- C) should be signed by a trade union
- D) ought to be a workplace agreement

32. "Custom and practice" agreements are usually \_\_\_\_\_ . .

- A) included in the contract
- B) known to employees only
- C) written clearly in the contract
- D) signed by the employer and a trade union

33. According to the passage, the trade union and employer may negotiate an agreement on \_\_\_\_\_ . .

- A) paid holidays
- B) insurance terms
- C) training programs
- D) conditions at work

34. If the employee receives his pay in cash, this practice will be regarded as \_\_\_\_\_ .

- A) reasonable
- B) practical
- C) illegal
- D) unfair

35. The passage is mainly about \_\_\_\_\_ .

- A) the negotiation with an employer
- B) the employment contract
- C) the working conditions
- D) the job responsibilities

## Passage 2

Flying Blue is a frequent flier rewards program offered by Air France and KLM Royal Dutch Airlines. Flying Blue members enjoy the ability to earn and spend air mile points on flights and services offered by Air France, KLM, and its various airline partners.

Flying Blue also offers other ways to spend your points with select travel and transportation companies for things such as car and hotel rentals (租借). Award miles can be used to purchase discounts, gifts and free flights.

Flying Blue offers several different levels of membership dependent on how often you fly and how many air mile

points you have accumulated, The levels are in the order of Ivory (象牙), Silver, Gold, and Platinum(白金). As one increases in membership level, one will receive increased benefits such as first class promotion on flights and extra baggage allowance. Members also are allowed entrance into Sky Team VIP rooms.

Members must fly in a paid flight at least once every twenty months or their miles will no longer count. The Flying Blue reward program is a great way for frequent fliers and travelers to get a little bit more out of their Airline travels. As the first membership level, Ivory is your gateway to enjoying all that Flying Blue has to offer. With Ivory membership, you can start earning and spending miles on a large number of flights and services. There are so many reasons to join the Flying Blue program---and it all starts with Ivory.

36. Flying Blue is a rewards program specially intended for \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) first class travelers
- B) business executives
- C) frequent passengers
- D) VIP members

37. Flying Blue members have right to use their award miles to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) get free tickets
- B) visit local scenic spots
- C) shop in the supermarkets
- D) go through the VIP passage

38. To make their miles count, members must \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) pay their membership fees regularly
- B) fly overseas at least once every year.
- C) take a domestic flight with Air France once a month.
- D) pay for their flight at least once within twenty months

39. Which of the following statements is TRUE according to the passage?

- A) All the members enjoy equal benefits.
- B) Ivory is the starting membership level.
- C) Fliers can choose any membership level.
- D) VIP rooms are only for the Platinum level.

40. The title of the passage could be \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) Introduction to Flying Blue.
- B) Flying with Air France and KLM
- C) Accumulation of Air Mile Points
- D) Levels of Flying Blue Membership

### Passage 3

A material which usually keeps animals and people warm is providing an oil clean-up service for the environment. Wool from sheep proved to be an effective “sponge” to soak up oil from the waters of the Persian Gulf after the Gulf War in 1991. The absorbent qualities of wool were used to good effect in wool poles which swept across the surface of the water.

Now the same absorbent qualities are being used by railways in the Netherlands. Wool mats produced by Rhanex Wools of New Zealand have been laid between the rails at eight major Dutch railway stations to soak up diesel oil (柴油) dropping from locomotives. Dutch authorities were worried that diesel oil was seeping (渗透) through the ground into the water table, which is used for farm irrigation and to supply drinking water. The mats can be regularly squeezed to extract the diesel oil from them, and then reused.

Similar wool mats are being used in inner city car parking lots in Sydney, Australia, to soak up oil dropping from parked cars. One parking lot owner believed that the value of his land could be reduced by oil pollution.

The environmental friendly qualities of wool are also being put to good use to protect wool itself. High value Merino sheep in Australia and Canada are wearing wool covers to protect their fleece (羊毛).

41. Which of the following is NOT one of wool's advantages? \_\_\_\_\_

- A. It has absorbent quality.
- B. It could be squeezed and reused.
- C. It can be used to avoid pollution.
- D. It could increase the price of land.

42. It can be inferred that wool first proved very useful in absorbing oil \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. in ancient time
- B. in the Gulf War
- C. after the Gulf War
- D. before the Gulf War

43. Which country used wool to prevent oil seeping into earth? \_\_\_\_\_

- A. America.
- B. Iraq.
- C. New Zealand.
- D. The Netherlands.

44. Why are wool mats being used in parking lots in Sydney? \_\_\_\_\_

- A. To prevent the cars from turning over.
- B. To absorb oil leaking from the parked cars.
- C. To attract more drivers to park their cars.
- D. To ask for a higher price when the lands are sold.

45. Which function of wool is NOT mentioned in the passage? \_\_\_\_\_

- A. Storing up oil.
- B. Making clothes.
- C. Absorbing oil.
- D. Protecting sheep.

#### Passage 4

When you learn a foreign language you must learn more than just the vocabulary and the grammar. To communicate successfully in speech, you must also learn the nonverbal language, or "body language" of that culture. "Body language" is a term used to describe facial expressions, gestures, and other movements of the body that send messages. This means of communication is so important that we may actually say more with our movements than we do with words.

Speaking a foreign language is sometimes difficult because we may not understand the nonverbal signals of another culture, or they may mean something very different from what they mean in our own culture. For example, nodding the head up and down is a gesture that conveys a different message in different parts of the world. In North America, it means "I agree". In the Middle East, nodding the head down means "I agree" and up means "I disagree". In a conversation among Japanese, it often simply means "I am listening". One Japanese student in the United States learned the difference the hard

way. While speaking with a salesman, the student nodded his head politely to show that he was paying attention. The next day the salesman brought a new washing machine to the student's apartment.

Although we spend many years learning how to speak a foreign language, misunderstandings can occur unless we also know the nonverbal language and the correct behavior of that culture. We are not really prepared to communicate in a foreign language unless we know whether to shake hands or bow, when to sit and stand, and how to behave in unfamiliar situations. Perhaps a fifth skill ought to be added to the four traditional communications skills of reading, writing, speaking, and listening: cultural awareness.

46. According to the passage, successful communication depends on all of the following EXCEPT \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. nonverbal language      B. grammar      C. humor      D. vocabulary
47. Body language probably does NOT describe \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. the way people laugh                      B. the way people are seated  
C. the way people shake hands              D. the way people sleep
48. Why did the American salesman bring a new washing machine to the Japanese student's apartment? \_\_\_\_\_
- A. Because the salesman misunderstood the student.  
B. Because the salesman was a good listener.  
C. Because the student agreed to take it.  
D. Because the student was polite.
49. Which of the following can be inferred according to the passage? \_\_\_\_\_
- A. Don't nod your head up and down when buying things.  
B. We should also spend years learning body language.  
C. Body language is playing an important role in intercultural communication.  
D. Don't communicate in a foreign language before we know the body language of that culture.
50. Which of the following can be the title of this passage? \_\_\_\_\_
- A. Communication Without Words              B. Five Communication Skills  
C. Body Language and Misunderstanding              D. Foreign Language Learning

### Part III. Cloze (10 points, 1 point each)

**Directions:** In this part there are 10 blanks in the following passage. For each blank there are four alternative choices marked A, B, C and D. You should choose the one that best fits into the passage. Then write your answer in the corresponding place on your Answer Sheet.

My brother, Henry, has an excellent job at a bank. I couldn't 51 him 52 he told me that he had decided to give it 53. Though I tried to make him 54 his mind, I failed completely. "You should reconsider your decision," I said. "You have already spent five years in the bank and you could have a wonderful career. You might become a bank manager 55 the time you're thirty-five." "I know," Henry answered. "I've got no complaints of the bank. It's a good job in pleasant surroundings and we keep civilized hours. The bank manager told me that my 56 were excellent." "Then why do you want to leave?" I exclaimed. "It's the money," Henry said. "But you're getting a good salary," I answered. "I don't 57 that," Henry said. "What do I do at the bank? Well, at the moment 58 I do is to count money. I find it very depressing." "What's depressing about counting money?" I asked, unable to follow the logic of Henry's argument. "You don't understand," Henry answered. "I 59 counting my own money, 60 I hate counting other people's!"

51. A. understand      B. believe      C. trust      D. remember  
52. A. when      B. then      C. since      D. that  
53. A. away      B. off      C. up      D. in  
54. A. to change      B. change      C. changing      D. changed  
55. A. by      B. at      C. on      D. during  
56. A. prospects      B. hopes      C. outcomes      D. results  
57. A. think      B. consider      C. mean      D. care  
58. A. that      B. which      C. how      D. all  
59. A. wait      B. feel      C. find      D. enjoy  
60. A. though      B. but      C. although      D. instead

**Part IV. Translation---English to Chinese (15 points)**

**Directions:** *Translate the following paragraph into Chinese*

Listening to English regularly will not only improve your ear, but also help you build your speaking skills. In addition to language tapes especially prepared for your course, you can also listen to English radio broadcasts, watch English TV, and see English movies. The first time you listen to a taped conversation or passage in English, you may not be able to catch a great deal. Try to get its general meaning first and listen to it over and over again. You will find that with each repetition you will get something more.

**Part V .Writing (15 points)**

**Directions:** Your former high school desk-mate is planning to visit the city where you are studying now during his/her summer vacation. Write a letter to tell him/her some information about the scenic spots (景点) here.

# 湖北理工学院 2015 年英语真题答案

## Part I. Vocabulary and Structure (20 points )

### Section A (10 points, 0.5 point each)

1. C            2. A            3. C            4. B            5. D  
6. D            7. B            8. A            9. D            10. A  
11. B    12. C    13. A    14. B    15. A  
16. B.    17. C    18. A    19. C    20. B

### Section B ( 10 points, 1 point each )

21. struck                    22. popularize                    23. reducing  
24. increasingly            25. enable                    26. checked  
27. schedule                    28. effectively                    29. fashionable  
30. meeting

## Part II .Reading Comprehension (40 points, 2 points each )

### Passage 1

31.B 32. A 33. D 34. C 35. B

### Passage 2

36.C 37.A 38.D 39.B 40.A

### Passage 3

41. D 42. C 43. D 44. B 45.A

### Passage 4

46. C 47.D 48.A 49.C 50.A

## Part III Cloze (10 points, 1 point each)

51-55 BACBA                    56-60 ACDDDB

## Part IV. Translation---English to Chinese ( 15 points)

经常听英语不仅会提高你的听力，而且有助你培养说的技能。除了专为课程准备的语音磁带外，你还可以听英语广播，看英语电视和英语电影。第一次听录好音的英语对话或语段，你也许不能听懂很多。先试着听懂大意，然后再反复地听。你会发现每次重复都会听懂更多的东西。

## Part V. Writing (15 points)

### Sample:

Dear Mary,

I'm so glad you are going to visit Shanghai. It is such a beautiful city that there are a lot of scenic spots for you to visit.

Shanghai Center or Oriental Pearl TV Tower is the first choice for tourists, where they can have a bird view of the whole city. Other places such as Yuyuan Garden and Nanjing Road Pedestrian Street are good places not only to see but also to do shopping. Besides, there are a lot of snacks there. I will show you around Shanghai during your stay here.

I'm looking forward to your coming.

Best wishes.

Yours,

Wendy

写作评分标准:

第五档: 13-15分 完全符合写作格式的要求, 覆盖所有内容要点, 表达思想清楚, 文字通顺, 连贯性很好, 基本上无词汇和语法错误。

第四档: 10-12分 基本符合写作格式的要求, 有个别地方表达思想不够清楚, 文字基本通顺、连贯, 有少量词汇和语法错误。

第三档: 6-9分 未恰当完成写作格式的要求, 漏掉内容要点, 表达思想不清楚, 文字多处出现词汇和语法错误, 影响了对写作内容的理解。

第二档: 3-5分 未完成写作格式的要求, 明显遗漏主要内容, 表达思想紊乱, 有较多词汇和语法的重大错误, 未能将信息传达给读者。

第一档: 0-2分 作文与题目基本毫不相关; 内容太少, 无法评判; 所写内容几乎无法看清。







36. To be a good salesman, the most important thing is to \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) learn from different kinds of people
  - B) understand what people are thinking
  - C) see what people usually do in daily life
  - D) watch what changes people have made
37. According to the passage, you can make a woman feel comfortable by \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) talking about fashions
  - B) playing football together
  - C) sending a small gift to her
  - D) saying yes to her questions
38. One way to make people get into the habit of saying yes is to \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) ask them to say what they like
  - B) tell them to do anything you want
  - C) help them feel confident in themselves
  - D) get them to say yes to a lot of your questions
39. According to the last paragraph, the author believes that \_\_\_\_\_.
- A) it is right to do anything in business
  - B) it is useless to believe in what customers say
  - C) it is unfair to take too much advantage of people
  - D) it is dangerous to listen to the advice of a salesman
40. Which of the following statements is TRUE according to the passage?
- A) Most women like to talk about sports events.
  - B) Some business people would do anything to sell.
  - C) It's difficult to understand other people very well.
  - D) You can make people do anything by talking with them.

### Passage Two

**Directions:** This task is the same as Task 1. The 5 questions or unfinished statements are numbered 41 to 45.

A share house is money-saving. When you share a house, your bills, rent and possibly food costs will be much lower. If the house is already established, you don't have to worry about buying things like a fridge and TV.

#### Choosing good housemates (合租人)

Moving in with friends can be fun but it can result in conflict (冲突) and a loss of friendship. Think carefully about the type of person suited to your character.

Ask advice from friends who have lived in share houses, or consult a youth worker or a relative.

#### Setting some guidelines

Every share house is different, but there are some guidelines (准则) that can help you avoid conflict:

- \* Issue or ask for a receipt (收据) when you pay or collect the rent.
- \* Spread responsibility for bill payment.
- \* Where possible, deal with problems through face-to-face communication.

Our *Living in a share house* web-page has some advice and ideas to help make sharing with your housemates a great experience.

41. According to the first paragraph, the main advantage of a share house is that \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) it avoids wasting time
- B) it saves your money
- C) it develops friendship
- D) it prevents conflict

42. According to the passage, an ideal housemate is a person who is \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) suitable for your character
- B) good at doing housework
- C) willing to help you
- D) easy to talk with

43. When you collect the rent from your housemate, you are advised to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) write down the amount
- B) choose a right date
- C) demand cash only
- D) give a receipt

44. To solve a problem with your housemate, it is better for you to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) discuss it with the person on the telephone
- B) seek advice from your friends or relatives
- C) talk with him or her about it face to face
- D) speak to your parents about it first

45. The passage is mainly about how to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) choose a good neighbor
- B) look for a new house
- C) live in a share house
- D) share housework

### Passage Three

**Directions:** This task is the same as Task 4. The 5 questions or unfinished statements are numbered 46 to 50.

Alibaba Group was established in 1999 by 18 people led by Jack Ma, a former English teacher from Hangzhou, China. From the beginning, the company's founders believed that the Internet would help small businesses to grow and compete more effectively in the domestic and global economies. Since launching its first website which helped small Chinese exporters, manufacturers and entrepreneurs to sell internationally, Alibaba Group has grown into a global leader in online and mobile commerce. Today the company runs online marketplaces as well as Internet-based businesses which offer advertising and marketing services, electronic payment, cloud-based computing and network services and other services.

Judy Tong, the head of the Alibaba Group wants to create a nationwide delivery service for China, something that does not yet exist. Alibaba aims to deliver web orders to anywhere in the world within three days. "Our aim is to make it

easy to deliver goods to anywhere,” Tong said “so that parcels delivered in China can arrive in 24 hours and parcels delivered cross-border can arrive in 72 hours instead of several days currently for China shipments and days or weeks for international orders. This should be possible in five to eight years”.

46. According to the passage, Jack Ma believed that \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) the Internet would help
- B) the Internet was good for domestic and global economies.
- C) small businesses could grow with the help of the Internet
- D) Alibaba was established in 1999

47. Alibaba’s first website \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) has grown into a global leader
- B) enabled small business to sell internationally
- C) made small Chinese exporters into global leaders
- D) was responsible for mobile commerce

48. One of the services Alibaba offers is \_\_\_\_\_.

- A) electronics B) electric goods
- C) electricians D) electronic payment

49. What is Judy Tong’s aim?

- A) To create a nationwide and worldwide delivery service.
- B) To improve the international delivery service.
- C) To start a 72-hour national delivery.
- D) To import goods from international companies.

50. When does Judy Tong hope this will be possible?

- A) Five or eight years later.
- B) It should be possible within three days.
- C) In about five to eight years.
- D) In 24 hours for cross-border deliveries.

#### Passage Four

**Directions:** *The following is a list of words used in a resume. After reading it, you are required to find the items equivalent to (与...等同) those given in Chinese in the table below. Then you should put the corresponding letters in the brackets on the Answer Sheet, numbered 56 through 60.*

- A ----- job objective
- B ----- interests and hobbies
- C ----- personal data
- D ----- degree certificate
- E ----- first name
- F ----- last name
- G ----- marital status

H	-----	date of birth
I	-----	job qualification
J	-----	nationality
K	-----	reference
L	-----	work experience
M	-----	education background
N	-----	sex
O	-----	permanent address
P	-----	contact number
Q	-----	place of birth

**Examples:** (K) 证明人 (G) 婚姻状况

- |              |          |
|--------------|----------|
| 51. ( ) 工作目标 | ( ) 出生地  |
| 52. ( ) 性别   | ( ) 学历   |
| 53. ( ) 国籍   | ( ) 工作经历 |
| 54. ( ) 姓氏   | ( ) 出生日期 |
| 55. ( ) 学位证书 | ( ) 个人信息 |

### Part III Cloze (10 points, 1 point each)

**Directions:** This part, number 56 to 65, is a passage. You are required to complete each one by deciding on the most appropriate word or words from the 4 choices marked A), B), C) and D). Then you should mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet with a single line through the center.

The job of raising children is a tough one. Children don't come with an instruction manual. Each child is 56 as a person. To Americans, the goal of parents is to help children 57 on their own two feet. American parents try to teach their children as 58 — not as **extensions (延续) of themselves**. When children become adults, their 59 with their parents becomes more like a friendship 60 equals (平等的人). Most young couples with children struggle with the issue of childcare. Mothers have traditionally stayed home 61 their children. In recent years, though, a growing trend is to put preschoolers in a day care center. Many Americans have strong feelings about 62 arrangement (安排) is best. Some argue that a day care 63 is a positive experience for children. Others insist that mothers' care are the 64 for children. A number 65 women are now leaving the work force to become full-time homemakers.

56. A) none      B) unique      C) famous      D) especial  
57. A) stand      B) run      C) climb      D) jump  
58. A) kids      B) individual      C) adults      D) genius  
59. A) relationship      B) nation      C) knot      D) feel  
60. A) among      B) between      C) above      D) within  
61. A) by      B) with      C) for      D) in  
62. A) what      B) whose      C) which      D) that  
63. A) center      B) garden      C) shop      D) house  
64. A) good      B) bad      C) best      D) worst  
65. A) of      B) in      C) for      D) on

**Part IV Translation--English into Chinese (15 points)**

**Section A (8 points, 2 points each)**

**Directions:** This part, numbered 66 to 70, is to test your ability to translate English into Chinese. Each of the four sentences (No.66 to No.69) is followed by four choices of suggested translation marked A), B), C) and D). Make the best choice and write the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet.

66. I would like to pay a visit to your factory to find out about the possibility of importing automobile parts from you.

- A) 我想去你们工厂参观，看看你们厂是否有可能进口汽车零部件。
- B) 我想访问你们的工厂，看看是否有可能从你厂进口汽车配件。
- C) 要进口我们的产品，我建议你们到我厂参观，了解是否有这个必要。
- D) 你们到我厂参观访问之后，就能够知道是否有可能进口汽车配件了。

67. Our products are sure to enjoy popularity in your market for their good quality and reasonable prices.

- A) 我们生产的商品物美价廉，相信在你方市场上是一定会找到销路的。
- B) 我们产品的质量高，但价格不高，在你方市场却根本无法买到。
- C) 我们的产品由于质量优良，价格合理，一定会受到你方市场的欢迎。
- D) 我们产品的价格虽然高，但是品质优良，所以在你们市场供不应求。

68. The gift cards are available through the Internet, or by phone at 800-700-6000 and at many stores.

- A) 只有在网上报名或打电话 800-700-6000 预约，你才可以到许多商店领取礼品。
- B) 礼品卡可通过互联网购买，或打电话 800-700-6000 购买，在很多商店也有售。
- C) 如果上网或者拨打 800-700-6000 电话，你同样可以得到很多商店赠送的礼品。
- D) 礼品卡在所有网站和商店都有售，或可打电话订购，电话号码 800-700- 6000。

69. One purpose of market research is to learn about people -- the people who will buy from you.

- A) 市场调查的对象之一是你周围的人，即帮你推销产品的人。
- B) 市场调查的范围之一是向人们，特别是买你产品的人学习。
- C) 市场调查的一个目的就是了解人，即要向你购买东西的人。
- D) 市场调查的一个方法是吸引人，也就是购买你的商品的人。

**Section B (7 points )**

**Directions:** This section is to test your skill of translation. Write your translation of the paragraph (No.70) in the corresponding space on the Translation/Composition Sheet.

70. We have just bought a large quantity of high-quality sports shoes, and we are able to offer them to you at the very reasonable prices. We are sure that you will be satisfied with these sports shoes. We hope that you will take full advantage of this opportunity. We look forward to your early reply.

**Part V Writing (15 points)**

**Directions:** This part is to test your ability to do practical writing. You are required to write a Letter of Complaint according to the following information given in Chinese. Remember to do the task on the Translation /Composition Sheet.

假如你是 Jenny Wang, 现在请你给 Sunxing 手机专卖店的经理写一封**投诉信**。

**写信日期:** 2016 年 6 月 17 日

**投诉内容:**

1. 今年 5 月你在 Sunxing 专卖店购买了一款新手机;
2. 第一个星期就出现死机的故障问题;
3. 已经送店维修了两次, 仍然不能正常使用;
4. 强烈要求调换新机或退货.
5. 期待尽快回复.

***Words for reference:***

专卖店 Franchise House



1. 本题按综合方式评分，从**格式、内容和语言**三方面全面衡量，给出全文评审的总体印象分(global/impression marking)。
2. 评分时以考生应得(rewarding)分数评定，不要以扣分(penalty)方式评定。  
考生将所示信息或条件运用得越充分、表达越完整，得分值可适当提高等级。
3. 分数可分 5 个等级，即：
  - 1) 14 分：格式正确；内容完整，表达清楚；语言上仅有很少的小错。
  - 2) 11 分：格式基本正确；内容较完整，表达尚清楚；有一些语言错误，可以有个别句子结构上错误。
  - 3) 8 分：格式基本正确；内容大体完整，表达可勉强理解；有较多的语言错误，包括少量严重错误。
  - 4) 5 分：格式勉强正确；内容不完整，但是没有离题；表达有较大困难；语言有很多错误，有一些是严重错误。
  - 5) 2 分：格式不正确；内容表达不清楚；语言支离破碎，仅有个别句子尚正确。
4. 未遵照题干给定信息写作或语言表达完全无法理解，可按最低分 0-3 分取值。
6. 评分应力求准确，防止趋中倾向。

**Dear Sir,**

**I am writing to express my complaint about the new mobile phone I bought in your Franchise House on May 15. However, it has quite a serious problem of automatic power-off. / It doesn't work well (or It goes wrong) and frequently / often turn to automatic power-off.) It even stopped working during/in the first week! I have sent it twice to your shop / franchise house for repairing / repair but it still fails to work well.**

Therefore, **I strongly request you to replace a new one for me.** I hope you can help to solve this problem within 10 days, **if you couldn't, I will ask for refunding.**

**I am looking forward to your early reply.**

**Yours Sincerely,**

**Jenney Wang**

# 湖北理工学院 2017 年英语真题

## Part I. Vocabulary and Structure (0.5 point each, 20 points)

**Directions:** This part is to test your ability to construct grammatically correct sentences. It consists of 2 sections. It consists of 2 sections.

### Section A

**Directions:** In this section, there are 20 incomplete sentences. You are required to complete each one by deciding on the most appropriate word or words from the 4 choices marked A, B, C and D. Then you should mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet.

1. It was soon after the economic crisis \_\_\_\_\_ sales of e-business started to grow.  
A. why            B. how            C. where            D. that
2. \_\_\_\_\_ we receive your application, we'll send you an e-mail to confirm it.  
A. Once            B. Whatever            C. Whether            D. However
3. Neither the teacher nor the students \_\_\_\_\_ anything about it.  
A. knows            B. know            C. knowing            D. known
4. Each morning she has to spend at least an hour \_\_\_\_\_ her way to work.  
A. on            B. in            C. by            D. with
5. When you have filled in the form, keep the top part and send \_\_\_\_\_ part to the bank.  
A. others            B. other            C. the other            D. the others
6. The professor together with the students \_\_\_\_\_ working hard in the lab.  
A. are            B. be            C. is            D. have been
7. Only after we really understand your business \_\_\_\_\_ a suitable insurance program for you.  
A. can we recommend            B. we can recommend  
C. recommend we can            D. recommend can we
8. Because of \_\_\_\_\_ of time, I didn't go shopping with my sister yesterday.  
A. lack            B. shortage            C. zero            D. poverty
9. I got there \_\_\_\_\_ late \_\_\_\_\_ I failed to attend the job interview.  
A. too; to            B. such; that            C. so; that            D. so; as
10. I find it important \_\_\_\_\_ both Chinese and English well when we hunt for a good job.  
A. speak            B. speaks            C. speaking            D. to speak
11. Hardly had I got to the classroom \_\_\_\_\_ the class began.  
A. after            B. before            C. when            D. then
12. He is doing a part-time job at weekend, \_\_\_\_\_ will help him buy a birthday gift for his mother.  
A. that            B. which            C. with which            D. what
13. \_\_\_\_\_ I want to know is \_\_\_\_\_ getting on with the project.  
A. What; how are you            B. That; how you are  
C. Which; how are you            D. What; how you are
14. I can hardly imagine \_\_\_\_\_ so much money on a coat like that.  
A. spending            B. spend            C. to spend            D. spent
15. We have to take a taxi \_\_\_\_\_ we can arrive at the airport earlier.

A. as soon as      B. in order to      C. so as to      D. so that

16. My father is responsible \_\_\_\_\_ the production of Geely cars.

A. and    B. of    C. during    D. for

17. If you prevent a problem \_\_\_\_\_ getting too big, it is easier to solve.

A. in    B. at    C. from    D. to

18. You \_\_\_\_\_ be polite to customers at all times.

A. mustn't    B. are able to    C. could    D. must

19. I cannot stop \_\_\_\_\_ about my new job.

A. to think    B. think    C. thinking    D. thought

20. If you \_\_\_\_\_ in what you do, you will be better at it and it will be enjoyable.

A. take away    B. take pride    C. take apart    D. take over

## Section B

**Directions:** *There are 20 incomplete statements here. You should fill in each blank with the proper form of the word given in brackets. Write the word or words in the corresponding space on the Answer Sheet.*

21. Mary insisted that he (give) \_\_\_\_\_ more challenging work to her.

22. Now the number of college students in our country (be) \_\_\_\_\_ large.

23. Airplanes (able) \_\_\_\_\_ people to travel great distances rapidly.

24. They would rather try and fail than (give) \_\_\_\_\_ up the plan.

25. The condition of the factory was much (bad) \_\_\_\_\_ than I had expected.

26. I often can't help (laugh) \_\_\_\_\_ when he makes faces.

27. Our teacher was invited to (judgment) \_\_\_\_\_ a speech contest last week.

28. Is there any food (leave) \_\_\_\_\_ to feed the cat?

29. My friend thinks the new novel is worth (read) \_\_\_\_\_.

30. The food is good, but the (serve) \_\_\_\_\_ is awful in this restaurant.

31. Yesterday the personnel manager had a long (discuss) \_\_\_\_\_ with the trainee about his recent performance.

32. The iPhone (invent) \_\_\_\_\_ by Steve Jobs.

33. My (favor) \_\_\_\_\_ color is yellow.

34. A good person is not always (popularity) \_\_\_\_\_.

35. The (grow) \_\_\_\_\_ of online shopping is producing a fundamental change in consumer behavior.

36. She is an (emotion) \_\_\_\_\_ person who often weeps.

37. My father wanted me to become a (profession) \_\_\_\_\_ doctor, but he felt disappointed in the end.

38. Please tell us your point of (viewer) \_\_\_\_\_ on this issue.

39. In most Middle East countries, politics has close (associate) \_\_\_\_\_ with religion.

40. The (interview) \_\_\_\_\_ from the company asked me some very difficult questions.

## Part II Reading Comprehension (2 points each, 40 points)

**Directions:** *There are four passages in this part. Each passage is followed by some questions or unfinished statements. For each of them there are four choices marked A, B, C and D. You should decide on the best choice and mark*

the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet.

### Passage One

Questions 41 to 45 are based on the following passage:

Almost every family buys at least one copy of a newspaper every day. Some people subscribe(订阅) to as many as two or three different newspapers. But why do people read newspaper?

Five hundred years ago news of important happenings—battles lost and won, kings or rulers overthrown or killed—took months and even years to travel from one country to another. The news passed by word of mouth and was never accurate. Today we can read in our newspapers of important events that occur in countries far away on the same day when they happen.

Apart from supplying news from all over the world, newspapers give us a lot of other useful information. There are weather reports, radio, television and film guides, book reviews, stories and of course, advertisements. The bigger ones are put in by large companies to bring attention to their products. They pay the newspaper thousands of dollars for the advertising space, but it is worth the money, for news of their products goes into almost every home in the country. For those who produce newspapers, advertisements are also very important. Money earned from advertisements makes it possible for them to sell their newspapers at a low price and still make a profit.

Newspapers often have information on gardening, cookery and fashion, as well as a small but very popular section on jokes and cartoons.

41. The habit of reading newspaper is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. widespread  
B. found among a few families  
C. not popular  
D. uncommon
42. In the past, news was \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. sent by telegraph  
B. sent by letter  
C. sent by telephone  
D. passed from one person to another
43. The money spent on advertisements is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. wasted  
B. not much  
C. worthwhile  
D. of no use to anyone
44. Which of the following statements is NOT true?  
A. Five hundred years ago news did not take a long time to reach other countries.  
B. Large companies put big advertisements in the newspapers because they want to draw people's attention to their products.  
C. The news that we need in our newspapers is up-to-date.  
D. Though the newspapers are sold at a low price, those who produce newspapers still gain profit.
45. The phrase "subscribe to", which appears in the first paragraph, means "\_\_\_\_\_".  
A. contribute to certain amount of time  
B. write to someone regularly  
C. pay to receive some copies regularly  
D. appreciate for a certain period of time

### Passage Two

Questions 46 to 50 are based on the following passage:

More than 30,000 drivers and front seat passengers are killed or seriously injured each year. At the speed of only 30 miles per hour it is the same as falling from a third-floor windows. Wearing a seat belt saves lives; it reduces your chance of death or serious injury by more than half.

Therefore drivers or front seat passengers over 14 in most vehicles must wear a seat belt. If you do not, you could be fined up to £ 50. It will not be up to the drivers to make sure you wear your belt. But it will be the driver's responsibility to make sure that children under 14 do not ride in the front unless they are wearing a seat belt of some kind.

However, you do not have to wear a seat belt if you are reversing your vehicle; or you are making a local delivery or collection using a special vehicle; or if you have a valid medical certificate which excuses you from wearing it. Make sure these circumstances apply to you before you decide not to wear your seat belt. Remember you may be taken to court for not doing so, and you may be fined if you cannot prove to the court that you have been excused from wearing it.

46. This passage is probably taken from \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. a medical magazine
- B. a report
- C. a novel
- D. a government information booklet

47. Wearing a seat belt in a vehicle \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. reduces road accidents by more than half
- B. saves lives while driving at a speed up to 30 miles per hour
- C. reduces the death rate in traffic accidents
- D. saves more than 15,000 lives each year

48. It is the driver's responsibility to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. make the front seat passenger wear a seat belt
- B. make the front seat children under 14 wear a seat belt
- C. stop children riding in the front seat
- D. wear a seat belt each time he drives

49. According to the passage, which of the following people riding in the front does not have to wear a seat belt?

- A. Someone who is backing into a parking space.
- B. Someone who is picking up the children from the local school.
- C. Someone who is delivering invitation letters.
- D. Someone who is under 14.

50. For some people, it may be better \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. to wear a seat belt for health reasons
- B. not to wear a seat belt for health reasons
- C. to get valid medical certificate before wearing a seat belt
- D. to pay a fine rather than wear a seat belt

### Passage Three

Questions 51 to 55 are based on the following passage:

Youth is not a matter of time but a matter of self-improvement, both physically and morally. Being a good youth, one should have those factors: the basic one is health. A healthy body is a kind of priceless treasure. One can do nothing without it. Secondly, we should pay essential attention to our moral character. We should be always willing to help those in

trouble without any complaints. Moreover, we should care more about the people around us. Thirdly, cooperation and communication also play an important role in being a good youth. No one can live alone without any friends. And nobody can work out every problem without help of partners. So the youth should and must learn how to live and work well with others, including those people you don't like to cooperate or communicate with. The last but not the least, patriotism, meaning a love of one's country, is the one we should never forget. People always misunderstand the word "patriots" by thinking it only refers to those fighters who fight for their country. As a matter of fact, a patriot will do the things his country asks him to do. So being a youth is one thing, being a good one really needs to take every effort to make yourself to be.

51. The passage really wants to tell us that \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. what the meaning of "patriots" is      B. the qualities a good youth should have
- C. a youth should be doing good      D. one should help others
52. The first thing a good youth should have is \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. the best looking      B. the best riches      C. the good ability      D. a healthy body
53. A good youth should help others \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. willingly      B. at his convenience      C. if he wants to      D. with complains
54. From the passage, we can know that cooperation and communication are \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. good for some introverts      B. helpful to us
- C. important to everyone      D. not necessary to good friends
55. In the author's opinion, the patriots must \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. fight for the country      B. learn everything
- C. do what their country need them to do      D. protect their family and country

#### **Passage Four**

*Questions 56 to 60 are based on the following passage:*

We now spend almost half our waking hours either online, on the phone, or watching television according to a survey. The average adult is awake for 15 hours and 45 minutes every day and 45 per cent of that time is spent using some kind of modern technology.

On average we spend 91 minutes a day listening to the radio, while around 80 minutes a day are spent on text messaging, social networking and emailing.

More Britons have a mobile phone – 89% – than a fixed landline – 80%. The average British adult sends 200 texts a month. 16 to 24 year olds use mobiles primarily for texting, not phone calls.

Sending text messages is now the most popular way to communicate with one another on a daily basis, according to a new survey. Over half of all media used by young people is simultaneous with many emailing, instant messaging and text thing at the same time as watching television or listening to music.

Meanwhile, the over 55s are increasingly using computers, mostly for emails. 12 per cent of this age group are now members of a social networking site.

There has also been a boom in the numbers using their mobile phones to surf the Internet, up from 9 million to 13.5 million in just a year, because of the increased popularity of smartphones such as the iPhone.

56. According to the first paragraph, nearly half our waking time is spent on \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. mobile phones            B. watching television  
C. some kind of modern technology            D. online

57. There are more mobile phones used in Britain than \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. fixed landlines            B. televisions  
C. radios            D. Internet users

58. According to a new survey \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the most popular way to communicate is by texting  
B. the average British adult sends 200 texts a month  
C. 16 to 24 year olds use mobiles for phone calls  
D. 89% of Britons communicate on a weekly basis by phone

59. The number of over 55s who are members of a social networking site is \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. 22%            B. half            C. 12%            D. 9 million

60. Which of the following might be the best title of the passage?

- A. Sending Text Messages            B. Social Networking  
C. Britons and their Gadgets            D. Online Communication

### Part III. Cloze (1 point each, 10 point)

**Directions:** There are 10 blanks in the following passage. For each blank there are four choices marked A, B, C and D on the right side of the paper. You should choose the ONE that best fits into the passage and mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet.

For several years, Americans have enjoyed teleshopping ——— watching TV and buying things by phone. Now teleshopping is starting in Europe. In some 61 countries, people can turn on their 62 and shop for clothes, jewelry, food, toys and 63 things.

Teleshopping is becoming popular in Sweden. 64, the biggest Swedish company sells different kinds of things on TV in fifteen European countries, and in one year, it makes \$10 million. In France, there are two teleshopping channels, and the French 65 about \$ 20 million a year in buying things through those channels.

In Germany, 66 last year teleshopping was only possible on one channel for one hour every day. Then the government allowed more teleshopping. Other channels can 67 for telebusiness, including the largest American teleshopping company and a 24-hour teleshopping company. German 68 are hoping these will help them sell more things.

Some people like teleshopping because it allows them to do their shopping without 69. With all the traffic problems in cities, going shopping is not an easy thing. But at the same time, other Europeans 70 like this new way of buying things. They call teleshopping “junk on the air.”

61. A. European    B. Asian            C. American            D. African  
62. A. lights            B. switches            C. radios            D. TVs  
63. A. some else    B. another many    C. the other            D. many other  
64. A. Such as            B. For example    C. For teleshopping    D. It is like

65. A. takes            B. cost            C. spends            D. spend
66. A. to            B. until            C. unless            D. by
67. A. begin            B. leave            C. open            D. turn on
68. A. people            B. women            C. businessmen            D. officials
69. A. to go out            B. going out            C. to buy things            D. buying things
70. A. still            B. don't            C. even            D. won't

**Part IV. Translation (3 points each, 15 points)**

**Directions:** Please translate the following sentences into Chinese.

71. According to a recent survey in US, the workers did more than(不仅仅) complain about the relatively poor working conditions.
72. A generation gap is a difference of opinions between one generation and another regarding beliefs, politics, or values.
73. It has been found that some people devote themselves so fully to their business success that they develop unhealthy eating habits.
74. When choosing a job, you should find out what you enjoy doing instead of just applying for any job.
75. On the one hand, I agree with you but on the other hand, we should not forget that productivity costs (生产成本) are not always lower in the long run.

**Part V. Writing (15 points)**

**Directions:** This part is to test your ability to do practical writing. You are required to write an Email according to the following information given in Chinese. Remember to do the task on the Answer Sheet.

说明：如今网上购物成为日常生活的一部分，假如你在网上购买了一件衣服，收到后由于如下原因，打算给店主 Lisa 发一封邮件要求退货，理由如下：

1. 实物与网店网页的描述差距较大（哪些方面自拟）。
2. 发货比约定时间晚，衣服本来是作为……（用途自拟），但收到时时间已过。
3. 结合自身经历再自拟一条理由。

参考词汇：

退货 return and refund    发货 delivery

# 湖北理工学院 2017 年英语真题答案

## Part I Vocabulary and Structure (0.5 point each, 20 points)

1-5 AABAC 6-10 CAACD 11-15 CBDAD 16-20 DCDCB

21. (should) give 22. is 23. enable 24. give 25. worse

26. laughing 27. judge 28. left 29. reading 30. service

31. discussion 32. was invented 33. favorite 34. popular 35. growth

36. emotional 37. professional 38. view 39. association 40. interviewer

## Part II Reading Comprehension (2 points each, 40 points)

41-45 ADCAC 46-50 DCBAB 51-55 BDACC 56-60 CABCC

## Part III. Cloze (10 points, 1 point each)

61-65 ADDBD 66-70 BCCBB

## Part IV Translation (3 points each, 15 points)

71. 根据美国最近的一份调查显示，工人们不只是抱怨较差的工作条件。

72. 代沟就是一代人与其他代人关于信仰、政治或者价值观的不同观念。

73. 人们发现有些人全身心倾注于事业的成功，以至养成不健康的饮食习惯。

74. 找工作要找自己喜欢做的，不要随便什么工作都去申请。

75. 一方面，我同意你的观点，但是另一方面，我们不应该忘记生产成本长期来看不会总是降低。

## Part V. Writing (15 points)

Dear Lisa,

I ordered a dress in your store the other day. I finally get it today, but to my surprise, it is not as good as I expect. The color is really different from the online pictures and the quality is not satisfactory. What's worse, I bought this dress as a birthday gift for my friend, but the delivery is late and slow. The birthday party was already over two days ago, so this is really embarrassing. I am now writing to ask for return and refund. Hope you can understand this.

Yours sincerely,

xxx

### 写作评分标准：(参考)

1) 本题的满分为15分。

2) 阅卷标准共分为五等：2分、5分、8分、11分、14分。

3) 阅卷人员根据阅卷标准，对照样卷评分，若认为与某一分数（如8分）相似，即定为该分数（即8分）；若认为稍优或稍劣于该分数，则可加一分（即9分）或减一分（即7分）。但不得加或减半分。

4) 评分标准：

2分— 条理不清，思路紊乱，语言支离破碎或大部分句子均有错误，且多数为严重错误。

5分— 基本切题。表达思想不清楚，连贯性差，有较多的严重语言错误。

8分— 基本切题。有些地方表达思想不够清楚，文字勉强连贯，语言错误相当多，其中有一些是严重错误。

11分— 切题。表达思想清楚，文字连贯，但有少量语言错误。

14分— 切题。内容较丰富，文字通顺，连贯性较好，基本上无语言错误，仅有个别小错。

# 湖北理工学院 2018 年真题

## Part I. Vocabulary and Structure (20 points)

**Directions:** This part is to test your ability to construct grammatically correct sentences. It consists of 2 sections.

### Section A (0.5 point each, 10 points)

**Directions:** In this section, there are 20 incomplete sentences. You are required to complete each one by deciding on the most appropriate word or words from the 4 choices marked A, B, C and D. Then you should mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet.

1. Let Mary \_\_\_\_\_ Jim carry the box.  
A. to help      B. helps      C. goes to help      D. help
2. The Blacks often go out \_\_\_\_\_ a walk in the evening.  
A. for      B. to      C. take      D. with
3. I sometimes get up \_\_\_\_\_ six \_\_\_\_\_ Saturday morning.  
A. at; on      B. in; on      C. at; in      D. in; in
4. Li Hua studies English \_\_\_\_\_ than we.  
A. hard      B. good      C. well      D. better.
5. \_\_\_\_\_ the weather like today? It's \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. How; raining      B. What's; rainy      C. How; rains      D. What; rains
6. Listen! Who \_\_\_\_\_ in the classroom?  
A. is singing      B. sing      C. sings      D. singing
7. ---- \_\_\_\_\_ do you want to be an actor?  
----It's very interesting.  
A. What      B. When      C. How      D. Why
8. Go straight and \_\_\_\_\_ left. The hospital is next to the post office.  
A. turn      B. take      C. go      D. come
9. Newspapers are expected to provide the \_\_\_\_\_ news.  
A. latest      B. later      C. last      D. late
10. Thank you for \_\_\_\_\_ me the good news.  
A. tell      B. to tell      C. telling      D. told
11. \_\_\_\_\_. Is there a hotel in the neighborhood?  
A. Excuse me      B. Hey      C. I'm sorry      D. Hello
12. Nothing \_\_\_\_\_ difficult if you put your heart into it.  
A. is      B. are      C. am      D. be
13. Tom is very short. So he sits \_\_\_\_\_ the classroom.  
A. in front      B. in front of      C. in the front of      D. front of
14. Today the weather is cool, so we decide \_\_\_\_\_ the mountains.  
A. climb      B. climbing      C. climbs      D. to climb
15. I \_\_\_\_\_ an hour reading English yesterday morning.  
A. took      B. paid      C. spent      D. spend
16. You'd better \_\_\_\_\_ your lessons carefully.

- A. study      B. to study      C. studying      D. studies
17. \_\_\_\_\_ some water in the cup.
- A. There are      B. There have      C. There is      D. There has
18. Shanghai is seven \_\_\_\_\_ old.
- A. hundreds of years      B. hundred of year      C. hundred years      D. hundred year
19. She has a pen in one of her hands, but what's that in \_\_\_\_\_ hand?
- A. another      B. the other      C. other      D. the others
20. My house is \_\_\_\_\_ the post office and the bank.
- A. on      B. in      C. between      D. over

**Section B (1 point each, 10 points)**

**Directions:** *There are 10 incomplete statements here. You should fill in each blank with the proper form of the word given in brackets. Write the word or words in the corresponding space on the Answer Sheet.*

21. I was made (wait) \_\_\_\_\_ for several hours.
22. He is always (willing) \_\_\_\_\_ to do his homework so he has not made much progress.
23. I remember (see) \_\_\_\_\_ the American naturalist two years ago in India.
24. If I (be) \_\_\_\_\_ you, I wouldn't miss the job interview tomorrow morning.
25. They wrote us a letter, (confirm) \_\_\_\_\_ that they had received our check.
26. He tried to solve the problem, but he (quick) \_\_\_\_\_ gave up.
27. The guest paid (little) \_\_\_\_\_ money than he should for the room.
28. It is far more (interest) \_\_\_\_\_ for me to chat online with friends than to watch TV.
29. Before (write) \_\_\_\_\_ an application letter, you should be aware what kind of people the employer needs.
30. It is really (wonder) \_\_\_\_\_ to see you here again in Beijing.

**Part II Reading Comprehension (2 points each, 40 points)**

**Directions:** *There are four passages in this part. Each passage is followed by some questions or unfinished statements. For each of them there are four choices marked A, B, C and D. You should decide on the best choice and mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet.*

**Passage One**

*Questions 31 to 35 are based on the following passage:*

People sometimes like to read stories of dogs very much. They think that dogs are much cleverer than cats, sheep, cows or other animals in their homes.

One of my close friends, Bob, has a very large police dog named Jack. Every Sunday afternoon, Bob and Jack have a walk in the park nearby. Jack likes these walks very much. One Sunday afternoon, I paid a visit to my friend. I stayed there for a long time and my friend and I had much more talk with each other than ever before. Soon it was time for them to take a walk in the park. We forgot that. Jack became worried about it. He walked around the room several times and then sat down in front of me and looked at me. But I still paid no attention (注意) to him. I went on talking with my friend. At last, Jack could not wait any longer. He went out of the room and came back a few minutes later. He sat down in front of me again. But this time, he held my hat in his mouth. Suddenly, I understood what Jack meant and so did my friend.

31. How many people are there in this story? \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. One      B. Two      C. Three      D. Four
32. Jack \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. is a close friend of mine  
B. enjoys the walks in the park every Sunday afternoon  
C. has many close friends  
D. enjoys talks in the room
33. Jack was worried because \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. he wanted to eat something  
B. it was Sunday again  
C. he was not feeling well  
D. he wanted his master (主人) to take him for a walk
34. Jack took my hat in his mouth to show that \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. I should leave the house at once  
B. he liked my hat very much  
C. he was hungry and he tried to eat it  
D. he wanted to have a rest
35. Which of the following is true? \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. When Jack and I were talking, my friend didn't pay any attention to us.  
B. When I was talking to my friend, Jack didn't pay any attention to us.  
C. When my friend and I were talking, we didn't pay any attention to Jack.  
D. When my friend was talking to Jack, I paid attention to them.

### Passage Two

*Questions 36 to 40 are based on the following passage:*

Once there lived an old man in a town. He always forgot a lot of things. So his wife always had to say to him, "Don't forget this." One day he went on a long way alone. Before he left home, his wife said, "Now you have all these things. You need them on your way. Take care of your things on the way." He went to the station. He bought a ticket and got on the train with it. About an hour later, the conductor began to see the tickets. He came to the old man and said, "Will you please show me your ticket?" The old man looked for his ticket in all his pockets but he could not find it. He was very worried. "I can't find my ticket. I really bought a ticket before I got on the train," said the old man. "I think you are right. I believe you bought a ticket. All right, you don't have to buy another ticket," said the conductor kindly. But the old man still looked worried and said sadly, "You don't know why I'm worried. If I don't find my ticket, I can't remember my station. Where am I going?"

36. The old man bought a ticket \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. after he got on the train      B. before he got on the train  
C. when the conductor told him to buy one      D. when he found he had no ticket with him
37. About an hour later, the conductor began \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. to buy the tickets      B. to look for the tickets

C. to check the tickets                      D. to show the tickets

38. The conductor told the old man that he didn't need to buy another ticket because \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the man was very old
- B. he thought the old man had no money with him
- C. the old man showed him the ticket
- D. he believed the old man

39. The old man still looked worried because \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. he couldn't get on the train
- B. he lost his ticket and a lot of money
- C. he thought his wife would get angry with him
- D. he forgot where he was going

40. Which of the following is right? \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. The old man went on the trip with his wife
- B. The old man didn't find his ticket
- C. The conductor was also an old man
- D. The old man had to buy another ticket

### Passage Three

Questions 41 to 45 are based on the following passage:

When Christopher Columbus landed on the then unnamed Costa Rica in 1502, he saw many Indians wearing gold earrings. So he thought the land must be rich in gold. He named the place Costa Rica, which means "rich coast" in Spanish.

Though little gold was found, Costa Rica today is indeed rich with coffee and bananas. Coffee is the most important product in Costa Rica and most of it is *exported* (出口) to other countries like America and West Germany. Bananas are the country's second most important export. Costa Ricans also grow many other crops such as fruits, corn and beans for their own use. Costa Ricans love colors and their houses are painted in bright colors. Education is very important to the Costa Ricans. Almost every village has a school and education is a must for children between seven and fourteen years of age. Boys and girls go to *separate* (单独的) schools. Classes begin in March and end in November. The other three months of the year are harvest time and the children have to help their parents to pick coffee beans.

41. What's the main idea of the first paragraph? \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. How Columbus found Costa Rica.
- B. How Costa Rica got its name.
- C. What the Costa Ricans wore.
- D. What language the Costa Ricans spoke.

42. The Costa Ricans may **NOT** paint their houses \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. pink and red    B. grey and black    C. blue and green    D. yellow and orange

43. In Costa Rica, boys and girls between seven and fourteen \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. must go to school                      B. study in the same school
- C. do not have to go to school at all    D. can choose to stop schooling at any time

44. From December to February, school children in Costa Rica \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. have lessons every day
- B. have their examinations
- C. help their parents pick coffee beans
- D. help their parents decorate their houses

45. This passage is mainly about \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. Christopher Columbus
- B. Costa Rica
- C. some products from Costa Rica
- D. the education of Costa Rica

#### Passage Four

Questions 46 to 50 are based on the following passage:

Long, long ago there was a very foolish thief. Do you know what he did one day? When he wanted to steal the bell on his neighbor's door, he walked up to the door, took hold of(抓住) the bell and pulled hard. The bell made a very loud noise. The thief was afraid and went home.

Then he sat down to think, "I must do something about the noise." he said. He thought and thought. At last he had an idea. "Ah, I'll put some cotton in my ears. Then I won't be able to hear the noise." The next day he went to the door of his neighbor, and took hold of the bell. This time he pulled even harder. The bell rang loudly, but the thief did not hear anything. With another hard pull he got the bell out. Just then the neighbor came running out.

"Steal my bell? I'll teach you a lesson." the angry man shouted. And he hit the thief on the nose. The foolish thief did not know how the neighbor found out he was stealing the bell. "Why did he come out just then?" he wondered.

46. The thief was trying to get \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. his neighbor
- B. his neighbor's doorbell
- C. some cotton
- D. a door with a bell on it

47. The thief put some cotton in his ears. He thought it would be for \_\_\_\_\_ him to steal the doorbell.

- A. dangerous
- B. difficult
- C. safe
- D. easy

48. The neighbor ran out probably because \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. he knew his doorbell was being stolen
- B. he thought someone was eager to visit him
- C. he realized something strange happened
- D. Both B and C

49. The neighbor hit the thief to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. give him lessons
- B. punish him for stealing
- C. help him with the bell
- D. be his teacher

50. Which of the following is TRUE? \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. The thief understood why he was hit on the nose.
- B. The thief knew why the neighbor came out.
- C. The thief thought the neighbor couldn't hear the noise the bell made.

D. The thief didn't want to know why the neighbor ran out.

**Part III. Cloze (0.5 point each, 10 points)**

**Directions:** *There are 20 blanks in the following passage. For each blank there are four choices marked A, B, C and D on the right side of the paper. You should choose the ONE that best fits into the passage and mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet.*

When we want to tell other people what we think about, we can do it with the help of words or with the help of signs. We sometimes move our 51 up and down when we want to say “52”, and from side to side when we want to say “no”.

People, who cannot hear or speak, talk to each other with the help of their fingers. People who do not 53 each other's language have to do the same. This story shows 54 they sometimes do it.

A man who could not speak 55 was once in Canada. One day he went to a 56 and sat down at a table. When the waiter came, the man opened his mouth, put his 57 in it. He wanted to say, “Bring me something to 58.”

The waiter soon bought him a cup of 59. The man moved his hand from side to side. The waiter 60 him and took away the tea. In a moment he brought a cup of coffee and put it on the table. The man moved his head from side to side. He was very 61 but he did not want to drink. He shook his head when the waiter brought him a lot of 62 drinks, but drinks are not 63, of course.

The man was about to 64 when another man came in. When this man saw the waiter, he put his hand on his 65. That was 66. In a few 67, a large plate of meat and vegetable was brought in front of him.

Now you may 68, people can not understand the 69 of 70 so well as the language of words.

51. A. fingers    B. necks    C. heads    D. bodies  
52. A. yes    B. no    C. certainly    D. something  
53. A. speak    B. hear    C. know    D. understand  
54. A. how    B. why    C. when    D. where  
55. A. British    B. English    C. Canadian    D. Chinese  
56. A. hotel    B. restaurant    C. shop    D. school  
57. A. arm    B. wrist    C. hand    D. fingers  
58. A. read    B. write on    C. eat    D. drink  
59. A. milk    B. wine    C. coffee    D. tea  
60. A. understood    B. knew    C. heard    D. believed  
61. A. tired    B. angry    C. hungry    D. thirsty  
62. A. same    B. different    C. pleasant    D. unpleasant  
63. A. meat    B. vegetables    C. rice    D. food  
64. A. leave    B. speak    C. eat    D. drink  
65. A. mouth    B. head    C. stomach    D. back  
66. A. enough    B. more    C. much    D. good  
67. A. seconds    B. minutes    C. hours    D. whiles  
68. A. hear    B. see    C. observe    D. find  
69. A. speech    B. use    C. meaning    D. language  
70. A. heads    B. hands    C. signs    D. fingers

**Part IV. Writing (30 points)**

**Directions:** *This part is to test your ability to do practical writing. You are required to write a **letter of complaint** according to the following information given in Chinese. The body of your letter should be no less than **200 words**. Remember to write it on the Composition Sheet.*

假设你是王鹏，三天前在网店购买了十本书，在家签收后才发现其中两本书并不是自己当初购买的。请向该网点写一封投诉信，描述整件事情，并提出解决要求。

# 湖北理工学院 2018 年真题答案

## Part I Vocabulary and Structure (20 points)

### Section A (0.5 point each, 10 points)

1-5 DAADB 6-10 ADAAC 11-15 AACDC 16-20 ACCBC

### Section B (1 point each, 10 points)

21. to wait 22. unwilling 23. seeing 24. were 25. confirming  
26. quickly 27. less 28. interesting 29. writing 30. wonderful

## Part II Reading Comprehension (2 points each, 40 points)

31-35 BBDAC 36-40 BCDDDB 41-45 BBACB 46-50 BCDBC

## Part III Cloze (0.5point each, 10 points,)

51-55 CADAB 56-60 BDCDA 61-65 CBDAC 66—70 ABBDC

## Part IV Writing (30 points)

Dear Sir,

Today I have received ten books I ordered in your online shop at Tmall.com. I really appreciate your fast delivery and great service. But it is a great pity that I find two books of them are not the ones I paid for online three days ago.

The package containing the books appeared to be in good condition so that I accepted it and signed without checking. It was not until I unpacked it later that I realized two books were entitled differently from my original book list.

I shall be glad if you will send me the right books as soon as possible and let me know how to return the wrong books. I hope that my problem will get your serious consideration.

Yours sincerely,

Wang Peng

写作评分标准:

第五档: 13-15 分

完全符合写作格式的要求, 覆盖所有内容要点, 表达思想清楚, 文字通顺, 连贯性很好, 基本上无词汇和语法错误。

第四档: 10-12 分

基本符合写作格式的要求, 有个别地方表达思想不够清楚, 文字基本通顺、连贯, 有少量词汇和语法错误。

第三档: 6-9 分

未恰当完成写作格式的要求, 漏掉内容要点, 表达思想不清楚, 文字多处出现词汇和语法错误, 影响了对写作内容的理解。

第二档: 3-5 分

未完成写作格式的要求, 明显遗漏主要内容, 表达思想紊乱, 有较多词汇和语法的重大错误, 未能将信息传达给读者。

第一档: 0-2 分

作文与题目基本毫不相关; 内容太少, 无法评判; 所写内容几乎无法看清。



# 湖北理工学院 2018 年真题 2

## Part I. Vocabulary and Structure (20 points)

**Directions:** This part is to test your ability to construct grammatically correct sentences. It consists of 2 sections. It consists of 2 sections.

### Section A (0.5 point each, 10 points)

**Directions:** In this section, there are 20 incomplete sentences. You are required to complete each one by deciding on the most appropriate word or words from the 4 choices marked A, B, C and D. Then you should mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet.

1. Having retired, he \_\_\_\_\_ the club for old men and plays chess every day there.  
A) takes part in B) joins in C) attends D) joins
2. Chinese is also spoken in many other countries in Asia, \_\_\_\_\_ Singapore and Malaysia.  
A) for example B) such as C) instead of D) according to
3. What great trouble we had \_\_\_\_\_ where his house was.  
A) in finding B) to find C) find D) found
4. \_\_\_\_\_ catch the first bus, he got up very early this morning.  
A) In order to B) In order that C) So as to D) So that
5. While \_\_\_\_\_ along the street, I met an old friend of mine.  
A) I walking B) was walking C) I am walking D) walking
6. \_\_\_\_\_ telephone is working here. You have to get them \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) Both; repaired B) Neither; repaired C) Either; to repaired D) All; to repair
7. The college entrance exam is \_\_\_\_\_ important to the student, and it's also challenging.  
A) no more than B) no less than C) more than D) not more than
8. I told Sally how to get here, but perhaps I \_\_\_\_\_ for her.  
A) had to write it out B) must have written it out  
C) should have written it out D) ought to write it out
9. Some people were scared of the H1N1 flu virus. But \_\_\_\_\_ it was not as deadly as other flu viruses.  
A) entirely B) frequently C) actually D) gradually
10. Tom \_\_\_\_\_ skating, so he spends all his spare time on it.  
A) is popular with B) is concerned about  
C) is proud of D) is crazy about
11. My manager told me \_\_\_\_\_ the same mistake again or I would be fired.  
A) don't make B) not make C) not to make D) to not make
12. Hai Zi is very popular with young people \_\_\_\_\_ he has been dead for many years.  
A) ever since B) even if C) as if D) so that
13. The teacher asked Jim \_\_\_\_\_.  
A) why was he late for school B) why he was late for school  
C) how he was late for school D) how was he late for school
14. I really don't know \_\_\_\_\_ I had my money stolen.

A) when was it that B) that it was when C) where it was that D) it was where that

15. The number of the people invited to the meeting \_\_\_\_\_ about 100, but a number of them \_\_\_\_\_ late because of the heavy snow.

A) were; was B) were; were C) was; were D) was; was

16. Harry will do anything for Lucy except \_\_\_\_\_ her money.

A) lending B) lend C) borrowing D) borrow

17. We don't allow \_\_\_\_\_ in the meeting room.

A) to smoke B) smoked C) smoking D) to smoking

18. There were \_\_\_\_\_ for Saturday's movie.

A) not available tickets B) no tickets available

C) no available tickets D) tickets no available

19. It is high time someone \_\_\_\_\_ Tom that each member of a team has to do his share of work.

A) could tell B) tell C) told D) would tell

20. I didn't understand at first why he couldn't pass the test, no matter \_\_\_\_\_ hard he had tried.

A) when B) where C) what D) how

### Section B (1 point each, 10 points)

**Directions:** *There are 10 incomplete statements here. You should fill in each blank with the proper form of the word given in brackets. Write the word or words in the corresponding space on the Answer Sheet.*

21. Do the results of the research have any practical (apply) \_\_\_\_\_?

22. If you look to the left, you will see a river of great (wide) \_\_\_\_\_.

23. A (report) \_\_\_\_\_ is a person who writes news articles or who broadcasts news reports.

24. It was the first time Rebecca (invite) \_\_\_\_\_ us to dine out.

25. Both Marx and Alex were (German) \_\_\_\_\_.

26. When (see) \_\_\_\_\_ near the horizon, the moon appears strikingly larger.

27. When (heat) \_\_\_\_\_, iron can be changed into liquid.

28. Computers have brought us a (revolution) \_\_\_\_\_ way of working.

29. It is important that your homework (do) \_\_\_\_\_ by yourself, otherwise, you would never know how to do it.

30. That shy girl is quite (sense) \_\_\_\_\_ to other people's words.

### Part II Reading Comprehension (2 points each, 40 points)

**Directions:** *There are four passages in this part. Each passage is followed by some questions or unfinished statements. For each of them there are four choices marked A, B, C and D. You should decide on the best choice and mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet.*

#### Passage One

Questions 31 to 35 are based on the following passage:

If you go to a fast food restaurant, you will probably see a lot of teenagers. Today, many teenagers are overweight, and this is because of their bad eating habits. Most teenagers are keen about food with a lot of fat, oil, salt and sugar. People call this kind of food "junk food".

But bad eating habits go beyond fast food. We find many teenagers eat unhealthily. Some don't have breakfast before they go to school. During the day, some don't have a proper meal for lunch. In a recent survey at one school, scientists found that over two thirds of the students didn't follow a healthy diet. They didn't like vegetables, and many of them didn't like to eat fruits. They preferred to eat food with a lot of salt, sugar, or fat.

Parents today also worry about their children's diet. Some doctors give the following advice:

Teenagers shouldn't eat too much junk food.

Teenagers shouldn't eat food with too much salt. Salt can cause high blood pressure in the future.

Teenagers should eat food without much fat, oil and sugar.

Teenagers need to eat some fruits and vegetables every day. Fruits and vegetables are rich in vitamins(维生素)and have little fat.

Teenagers need to drink more milk. Milk will help their bones grow.

Teenagers need to eat breakfast every day. It is good for their body and mind.

31. How many pieces of advice are given by the doctors in the passage?

A). Five      B). Six      C). Seven      D). Eight

32. The underlined phrase "are keen about" in the passage means \_\_\_\_\_.

A). dislike      B). refuse      C). hate      D). love

33. Which of the following is TRUE?

A). Parents are worried about their children's diet today  
B). Scientists found one third of the students didn't have a healthy diet  
C). Today all teenagers are overweight  
D). Milk, fruits and vegetables are not good for children

34. It's right to \_\_\_\_\_ according to the passage.

A). eat junk food  
B). eat vegetables that are rich in vitamins  
C). drink milk and eat junk food often  
D). eat food with too much salt

35. The main purpose of the passage is to tell the children \_\_\_\_\_.

A). how to keep a healthy diet  
B). to eat fruits and vegetables  
C). how to have a proper meal for lunch  
D). not to eat junk food

## Passage Two

Questions 36 to 40 are based on the following passage:

The greatest recent social changes have been in the lives of women. During the twentieth century there has been a

remarkable shortening of the proportion of a woman's life spent in caring for children. A woman marrying at the end of the nineteenth century world probably have been in her middle twenties, and would be likely to have seven or eight children, of whom four or five lived till they were five years old. By the time the youngest was fifteen, the mother would have been in her early fifties and would expect to live a further twenty years, during which custom, opportunity and health made it unusual for her to get paid work. Today women marry younger and have fewer children. Usually a woman's youngest child will be fifteen when she is forty-five and can be expected to live another thirty-five years and is likely to take paid work until retirement at sixty. Even while she has the care of children, her work is lightened by household appliances and convenience foods.

The important change in women's life-pattern has only recently begun to have its full effect on women's economic position. Even a few years ago most girls left school at the first opportunity, and most of them took a full-time job. However, when they married, they usually left work at once and never returned to it. Today the school-leaving age is sixteen, many girls stay at work at least until shortly before their first child is born. Very many more afterwards return to full or part-time work. Such changes have led to a new relationship in marriage, with both husband and wife sharing more equally in providing the money, and running the home, according to the abilities and interests of each of them.

36. For women at the beginning of the twentieth century, the amount of time spent taking care of children \_\_\_\_\_.
- A). was shorter than in previous centuries
  - B). was longer than in previous centuries
  - C). was considered to be surprisingly long
  - D). account for a great part of their lives
37. According to the passage, around the year 1900 most women married \_\_\_\_\_.
- A). at about twenty-five
  - B). in their early fifties
  - C). as soon as possible after they were fifteen
  - D). at any age from fifteen to forty-five
38. When she was over fifty, the late nineteenth-century mother \_\_\_\_\_.
- A). would be healthy enough to take up paid employment
  - B). was usually expected to die fairly soon
  - C). would expect to work until she died
  - D). was unlikely to find a job even if she wanted one
39. One reason why the woman of today may take a job is that she \_\_\_\_\_.
- A). is younger when her children are old enough to look after themselves
  - B). does not like children herself
  - C). need not worry about food for her children
  - D). can retire from family responsibilities when she reaches sixty
40. According to the passage, it is now quite usual for women to \_\_\_\_\_.
- A). stay at home after leaving school
  - B). marry men younger than themselves
  - C). start working again later in life

D). marry while still at school

### Passage Three

Questions 41 to 45 are based on the following passage:

Shortly before the end of World War II, leaders of many nations, including the United States, decided to form an international organization. It was hoped that nations could discuss their disagreements in this organization instead of fighting over them.

On April 25, 1945, some 200 representatives from many nations came to San Francisco, California, to make the rules that would govern this organization. After months of hard work, arguments, and compromises (妥协), the United Nations was established.

The essential functions of the U.N. are to maintain international peace and security, to develop friendly relations among nations, to cooperate internationally in solving international economic, social, culture and human problems, to promote respect for human rights and fundamental freedoms and to be center for coordinating (协调) the actions of nations in attaining these common ends.

No country takes precedence (优先) over another in the U.N. Each member's rights and obligations are the same. All must contribute to the peaceful settlement of international dispute, and members have pledged (发誓) to refrain from the threat or use of force against other states. Though the U.N. has no right to intervene in any state's internal affairs, it tries to ensure that non-member states act according to its principles of international peace and security. U.N. members must offer every assistance in an approved U.N. action and in no way assist states against which the U.N. is taking preventive or enforcement action.

41. What does "them" in Paragraph 1 refer to?

- A). The nations. B). The United Nations.  
C). Disagreements. D). The representatives.

42. The idea of establishing the U.N. was put forward \_\_\_\_\_.

- A). before World War II B). during World War II  
C). after World War II D). on April 25, 1945

43. Which one is not seen as the U.N.'s function?

- A). Cooperation. B). Compromise. C). Coordination. D). Peace-maintaining.

44. What is the U.N.'s attitude toward non-member states?

- A). Force them to join the U.N.  
B). Ensure that they also act on its principles.  
C). Has a hand in their domestic affairs.  
D). Prevent the member states from coming into contact with them.

45. The member states cannot \_\_\_\_\_.

- A). start wars against any other states  
B). help any state that the U.N. is taking action against  
C). offer assistance with the approval of the U.N.  
D). do business with non-member states

### Passage Four

The following is a list of occupations. After reading it, you are required to find the items equivalent to those given in Chinese in the table below. Then you should put the corresponding letters in the brackets on the Answer Sheet, numbered 46 through 50.

A— Administration Staff  
C— Computer Engineer  
E— General Manager  
G— Manager for Public Relations  
I— Office Assistant  
K— Business Controller  
M— Financial Controller  
O— Legal Adviser

B— Bond Trader  
D— Export Sales Manager  
F— Insurance Actuary  
H— Marketing Executive  
J— Application Engineer  
L— Electrical Engineer  
N— Import Liaison Staff  
P— Market Analyst

Examples: (D) 外销部经理            (I) 办公室助理

46. ( ) 销售主管            ( ) 财务主任  
47. ( ) 法律顾问            ( ) 进口联络员  
48. ( ) 总经理            ( ) 证券交易员  
49. ( ) 行政人员            ( ) 公关部经理  
50. ( ) 应用工程师            ( ) 业务主任

### Part III. Cloze (0.5 point each, 10 point)

**Directions:** There are 20 blanks in the following passage. For each blank there are four choices marked A, B, C and D on the right side of the paper. You should choose the ONE that best fits into the passage and mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet.

Smoking, which may be a pleasure for some people, is a serious source of discomfort for their fellows. 51, medical authorities express their 52 about the effect of smoking 53 the health not only 54 those who smoke but also of those who do not. In fact, non-smokers who must 55 inhale the air polluted by tobacco smoke may 56 more than the smokers themselves.

As you doubtless 57, a considerable number of our students have 58 in an effort to 59 the university to ban smoking in the classrooms. I believe they are 60 right in their aim. 61, I would hope that it is 62 to achieve this by 63 the smokers to use good judgment and show concern 64 others rather than by regulation.

Smoking is 65 by City by-laws in theaters and in halls used for 66 films as well as in laboratories where there 67 be a fire hazard. Elsewhere, it is up to your good sense.

I am 68 asking you to maintain 69 in the auditoriums, classrooms and seminar rooms. This will prove that you have the non-smokers' health and well-being 70, which is very important to a large number of our students.

1.            A) Still                            B) More                            C) Again                            D) Further  
              A) concern                        B) trouble                        C) interest                        D) displeasure

2. A) on B) in C) with D) to
3. A) to B) about C) with D) of
4. A) involuntarily B) instinctively C) spontaneously D) reluctantly
5. A) endure B) suffer C) undergo D) put up with
6. A) alert B) awake C) aware D) informed
7. A) linked B) connected C) associated D) joined
8. A) make B) persuade C) cause D) tell
9. A) entirely B) totally C) just D) wholly
0. A) But then B) However C) Further D) Moreover
1. A) likely B) probable C) capable D) possible
2. A) pleading B) begging C) insisting D) calling on
3. A) with B) for C) to D) in
4. A) prohibited B) stopped C) suppressed D) prevented
5. A) playing B) demonstrating C) showing D) exhibiting
6. A) will B) should C) may D) must
7. A) hence B) therefore C) subsequently D) so
8. A) no smoking B) no smokers C) no smoke D) non-smoke
9. A) on mind B) in heart C) in mind D) on your mind
- 0.

#### Part IV. Writing (30 points)

**Directions:** *This part is to test your ability to do practical writing. You are required to write a RESUME according to the following information given in Chinese. The FIVE MAIN TOPICS of the RESUME has been written for you. Remember to write the RESUME on the Answer Sheet.*

说明：求职简历

内容：Mary，女，1986年7月16日出生，身体健康，未婚；地址：北京市海淀区学院路26号；邮政编码：100191，电话：010-56\*\*\*\*23

求职目标：谋求一个能充分发挥本人管理经验的职位，并可根据表现而获得晋升的机会

学习经历：2002-2005 北京市 101 中学

2005-2009 北京大学

工作经历：2009-2010 南方电子公司经理助理

2010-2017 北京进出口贸易公司经理助理

专长：英语

Words for reference:

1. 个人基本情况应包括：name, date of birth, sex, health, family status, address, home number
2. 发挥本人的专业 display one's specialty in
3. 晋升机会 advancement opportunity
4. 经历助理 manager assistant

下面是简历五大部分的标题。填写其他内容时，请注意基本格式！

Resume

Personal Data:

Job Objective:

Education:

Work Experience:

Specialty:

# 湖北理工学院 2018 年真题 2 答案

## Part I Vocabulary and Structure (20 points)

### Section A (0.5 point each, 10 points)

1—5 DBAAD 6—10 BCCCD 11—15 CBBCC 16—20 BCBCD

### Section B (1 point each, 10 points)

21. application 22. width 23. reporter 24. had invited 25. Germans  
26. seen 27. heated 28. revolutionary 29. be done 30. Sensitive

## Part II Reading Comprehension (2 points each, 40 points)

31—35 BDABA 36—40 DADAC 41—45 CBBBB

46. H, M 47. O, N 48. E, B 49. A, G 50. J, K

## Part III. Cloze (10 points, 0.5 point each)

51-55 DAADA 56-60 BCDBA

61-65 BDDBA 66-70 ABABC

## Part IV Writing (30 points)

### Resume

Personal Data:

Name: Mary

Date of Birth: July 16<sup>th</sup>, 1986

Sex: Female

Health: Good

Family Status: Single

Address: 26 Xueyuan road, Haidian district, Beijing

Telephone No.: 010-56\*\*\*\*23

Job Objective: Position in which I can fully display my specialty in management with advancement opportunities based on performance.

Education: 2002-2005 101 middle school in Beijing

2005-2009 Peking University

Work Experience: 2009-2010 Manager assistant, Southern Computer Company

2010-2017 Manager assistant of Beijing Import & Export Company

Specialty: English

### 写作评分标准: (参考)

- 1) 本题的满分为15分。
- 2) 阅卷标准共分为五等: 2分、5分、8分、11分、14分。
- 3) 阅卷人员根据阅卷标准, 对照样卷评分, 若认为与某一分数(如8分)相似, 即定为该分数(即8分); 若认

为稍优或稍劣于该分数，则可加一分（即9分）或减一分（即7分）。但不得加或减半分。

4) 评分标准:

2分— 条理不清，思路紊乱，语言支离破碎或大部分句子均有错误，且多数为严重错误。

5分— 基本切题。表达思想不清楚，连贯性差，有较多的严重语言错误。

8分— 基本切题。有些地方表达思想不够清楚，文字勉强连贯，语言错误相当多，其中有一些是严重错误。

11分— 切题。表达思想清楚，文字连贯，但有少量语言错误。

14分— 切题。内容较丰富，文字通顺，连贯性较好，基本上无语言错误，仅有个别小错。

## 2020 年湖北省普通专升本英语真题

### Part I. Vocabulary & structure 25%

**Directions:** This part is to test your ability to use words and phrase correctly to construct meaningful and grammatically correct sentences. In this part, there are 20 incomplete sentences here. You are required to complete each statement by choosing the appropriate answer from the 4 choices marked A), B), C) and D). Then mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet with a single line through the center.

1. Those who have \_\_\_\_\_ big contributions to the company should be awarded.

A. afforded B. given C. included D. made

2. As a parent, you will \_\_\_\_\_ full responsibility for what you say and do to your kids.

A. commit B. take C. give D. do

3. I believe that I am \_\_\_\_\_ for the position because of my education background and work experience.

A. qualified B. demanded C. applied D. collected

4. We supply different telephone communication products, some of \_\_\_\_\_ are particularly useful for small businesses.

A. what B. which C. whom D. these

5. She found it difficult to concentrate while \_\_\_\_\_ her new novel.

A. write B. wrote C. writing D. written

6. Healthcare is one of the areas \_\_\_\_\_ the successes of AI have the greatest practical value.

A. from that B. of whom C. by them D. in which

7. Since 1949, our country \_\_\_\_\_ remarkable progress in reducing poverty.

A. make B. made C. is making D. has made

8. If I \_\_\_\_\_ his telephone number, I would have turned to him for help.

A. have known B. will know C. had known D. knew

9. A good business plan helps you \_\_\_\_\_ and grow your business.

A. set B. run C. excise D. relate

10. If you have received several job \_\_\_\_\_ during your job searching, how do you choose the best one?

A. offers B. regulations C. benefits D. answers

11. Each passenger is \_\_\_\_\_ to carry one piece of hand luggage.

A. decided B. designed C. allowed D. brought

12. We all believe that the role he has \_\_\_\_\_ in this project is very important.  
A. put B. reached C. offered D. played
13. William is considered as one of the most \_\_\_\_\_ employees in this company.  
A. fluent B. efficient C. convenient D. sufficient
14. The recent earthquake in this area may \_\_\_\_\_ our company's future business.  
A. arrange B. achieve C. affect D. approve
15. As so many people were absent, the meeting had to be \_\_\_\_\_ until next Monday.  
A. put off B. set up C. given away D. taken over
16. The newly-built hotel is ideally placed for easy access \_\_\_\_\_ major attractions in the city  
A. at B. by C. with D. to
17. It has been more than five years \_\_\_\_\_ they met last time in Wuhan.  
A. since B. although C. for D. until
18. Nowadays, it seems that no one can ever avoid \_\_\_\_\_ the Internet.  
A. being used B. to use C. used D. using
19. A recent study shows that a person's living conditions only \_\_\_\_\_ about 50 percent of his or her happiness.  
A. account for B. turn on C. take off D. send out
20. If \_\_\_\_\_ in a hot place, these flowers will soon begin to die and fall.  
A. be put B. to put C. put D. putting
21. The time I spent \_\_\_\_\_ with the team has enabled me to learn more about business management.  
A. work B. working C. to work D. worked
22. The sports meeting had hardly begun \_\_\_\_\_ heavy rain poured down.  
A. as B. than C. while D. when
23. He expressed the hope \_\_\_\_\_ they could start a business relationship with us.  
A. that B. whether C. what D. which
24. By the time you get this letter, we \_\_\_\_\_ the project.  
A. were completing B. will have completed  
C. had completed D. are completing
25. The small village where we spent our holiday lies \_\_\_\_\_ the hillside  
A. for B. in C. on D. with

## Part II Reading Comprehension 50%

**Directions:** This part is to test your reading ability. There are two sections in it.

### Section I

**Directions:** There are 4 passages In this section. After each passage there are 5 questions. Each question is followed by four choices A). B). C). and D). You should choose the best answers to the questions and mark the corresponding letters on the **Answer Sheet** with a single line through the center.

#### Passage I

Most Americans switch careers at least three times throughout their lives. Gone are the days when people retired from the company where they first worked. The progressive mentality (心态) regarding business and technology often ensures

that people move from position to position as they try to find the right career for them.

Recent college graduates ask "what career is right for me?" many times in the months before and after graduation. Now more than ever, people are also asking "what career is right for me?" into their thirties, forties and fifties. Even baby boomers (生育高峰期出生的人) are asking "what job is right for me?" as they retire and reenter the workforce in their sixties and seventies. It seems that every employee in America is wondering which career path fits him or her best.

When you find yourself asking "what career is best for me?", follow some of these simple tips to set yourself straight on the best path for you.

1. Consult a website and take its test to see which career path might be right for you.
2. Think about whether you are happy with your current job.
3. Emphasize your skills in your resume.
4. Do more research about the new career.

26. According to the first paragraph, most Americans now \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. are more satisfied with their career than their parents
- B. change their careers at least three times in their life
- C. move their home more frequently than ever before
- D. retire from the company where they first worked

27. People change their position frequently in order to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. find a right career
- B. support their families
- C. start their own business
- D. adapt to the new technology

28. All American employees seem to be asking about \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. which company they will retire from
- B. when they should change a position
- C. what career path is right for them
- D. where they can find another job

29. Why are you advised to consult a website and take its test?

- A. To find information about job fairs.
- B. To improve your professional skills.
- C. To decide the right career path.
- D. To get in touch with a potential boss.

30. The last part of the passage is mainly about \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. ways to build a website
- B. steps to take an online test
- C. courses to train resume writing
- D. tips to find a right career path

## Passage 2

Being your own boss is the dream of most people, but it comes with a price. Since you do not have to answer to someone else, you have to be responsible for your own business. In this sense, the business becomes the new boss. Here

are some tips for you to observe.

**Work-life balance:** Starting a business will consume a lot of time and energy. Not letting the business prevent you from having personal time is a challenge. The failure to manage a work-life balance can lead to health problems and lost relationships with family and friends.

**Making decisions:** Since you are the owner, you have the final decision. This can be a tough challenge because you know that you alone have to bear the consequences of your decisions.

**Self-doubt and criticism:** In the beginning, customers and competitors will not take you seriously. Everyone will be quick to share their opinions on what you are doing wrong and why it will not work.

With all this, self-doubt will start to occur. Maybe they are all right. Maybe starting this business was a bad idea. If you *have done your homework*, this is the moment to overcome the fear of failure and have the confidence in yourself to keep going.

31. According to the first paragraph, being your own boss means that you should \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. meet your customers' demand
- B. take responsibility of your own business
- C. have the freedom to do what you like
- D. take other people's needs into consideration

32. The writer believes that not being able to manage a work-life balance can result in \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. big debts
- B. lost profits
- C. legal issues
- D. health problems

33. Making a final decision can be a tough challenge to business owners because \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. they have to be responsible for its consequences
- B. they are unable to turn to others for advice
- C. they find it hard to achieve a work-life balance
- D. they are prevented from having their personal time

34. What will your competitors react at the very beginning of your business?

- A. They will not accept your products.
- B. They will not take you seriously.
- C. They will criticize your business strongly.
- D. They will congratulate you on your success.

35. By saying "you have done your homework", the writer means \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. you are well-prepared
- B. you are fully satisfied
- C. you are highly confident
- D. you are less worried

### Passage 3

When people move from one city or country to another, the spread of diseases may result. People often bring in germs (病菌) that may not have been present there before. These new germs can spread quickly and cause previously unknown

diseases. If a germ is completely new to a region, people who already live there have no natural protection against it. As a result, they become ill more easily and die more often. In turn, newcomers may catch diseases that were not present in their own country. If they go back, they may carry the diseases with them and spread the diseases there, too.

Changes in the heating system of a building can also lead to disease. In the 1970s, there was a worldwide shortage of heating oil. As a result, hotels in the United States lowered the temperature in their heating systems in order to save fuel. This low temperature led to a deadly germ that grows in heating pipes. When the heated air was blown into the rooms of a hotel, it carried the germs. Many visitors became ill and several died.

36. The spread of new diseases may result from the move of people who \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. carry the germs
- B. have no protection
- C. become ill more easily
- D. work in a crowded place

37. When a new germ is spread to a region, \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. it will cause the whole region to suffer from a deadly disease
- B. newcomers are seldom affected by the newly-spread germ
- C. people there usually have no natural protection against it
- D. people in that region can hardly escape from the disease

38. From the passage we learn that changes in the heating system of a building can result in \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. an oil shortage
- B. certain diseases
- C. the air pollution
- D. a high temperature

39. What caused the growth of a deadly germ in the heating pipes of the hotels?

- A. The dry air.
- B. The polluted oil.
- C. The heated pipes.
- D. The low temperature.

40. The passage is mainly about \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. the protection against new diseases
- B. the danger of visiting new places
- C. the spread of new diseases
- D. the worldwide shortage of fuel

#### **Passage 4**

Some workplace stress is normal, but when stress at work begins to weaken your ability to perform in your job, it's time for you to take action. Start by paying attention to your physical and emotional health.

Get moving

Regular exercise is an effective way to help you to relax both your mind and body. Try to get at least 30 minutes of activity on most days. If it's easier to fit into your schedule, break up the activity into two or three shorter periods of time each day.

Get enough sleep

A lack of sleep can make you suffer from more stress. When you're well-rested, it's much easier to keep your emotional balance. Try to improve the quality of your sleep by keeping a sleep schedule and aiming for 8 hours a night.

Get support

Close relationships are important to helping you through times of stress. Simply sharing your feelings face to face with another person can help relieve some of the stress. Accepting support is not a sign of weakness and it won't mean you're a burden to others. In fact, most friends will be willing to help you to reduce your stress, and this will only strengthen your relationship.

41. You should take action to handle your workplace stress when \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. it affects your job performance
- B. it begins to damage your health
- C. it influences your emotion
- D. it shows its first signs

42. If possible, you are advised to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. exercise before you start your work each day
- B. do exercise together with your friends
- C. arrange your activities based on your health
- D. divide your activity into shorter periods of time

43. If you follow an 8-hour sleep schedule, you are more likely to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. get used to getting up early
- B. improve your sleep quality
- C. achieve positive effects of exercise
- D. be able to work longer every day

44. To relieve your stress, you are encouraged to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. show your weaknesses to your friends
- B. avoid becoming a burden to others
- C. make as many friends as possible
- D. share your feelings with others

45. The passage is mainly about \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. how to do exercise regularly
- B. how to seek help from others
- C. how to deal with workplace stress
- D. how to keep your emotional balance

## Section 2

**Directions:** There is 1 passage in this section. Read the passage and complete the outline below it (No.46 to No. 50)

You should write your answers briefly (**in no more than three words**) on the **Answer Sheet** correspondingly.

Booster Seats(幼儿保护座椅) are more than a good idea. It is the law. Until children are 8 years old or 4.9 feet tall, they can be too big for a child car seat but too small for a safety belt. A booster seat makes safety belts fit properly and reduces the risk of injury in a crash.

Which seat should I use? Either a proper-fitting child safety seat or booster seat installed (安装) correctly will meet the requirements of Michigan's new law for children under the age of 8 or not yet 4.9 feet tall. This includes using a booster seat with both a lap (膝部) and shoulder belt.

Where do I get a booster seat, and how much do they cost? Booster seats are available at many stores. They cost between \$15 and \$100 depending on the style.

Important: All booster seats are safest when used in the back seat and with both the car's lap and shoulder belt. Never use a lap belt only.

**Booster Seats**

Purposes: used for children under 46 or 4.9 feet tall

Advantages:

1. making safety belts fit properly
2. reducing the risk of 47 in a crash

Places to buy: available at 48

Prices: between 49

Proper way of use: with both a lap and 50 belt

**Part III Translation — English into Chinese 15%**

**Directions:** This part is to test your ability to translate English into Chinese. After each of the 5 sentences, numbered 51 to 55, you will read three choices of suggested translation marked A), B), and C). You should choose the best translation and mark the corresponding letter on your **Answer Sheet** with a single line through the center. And for the paragraph numbered 56, you should write your translation in the corresponding space on the **Translation/ Writing Sheet**.

51. Please let me know your schedule in advance, and I'll have my secretary book a ticket for you.

- A) 请告诉我您旅行的日程，秘书将会为您提前订票。
- B) 请提前告知您的日程表，我会让我秘书为您订票。
- C) 请告诉我您的行程，我的秘书会为您解决机票的。

52. First impression is so important that a hotel may win or lose its reputation at the front desk.

- A. 第一印象如此之重要，以致前台就会让宾馆赢得或失去声誉。
- B. 对前台工作的第一印象，直接关系到宾馆声誉的高低与好坏。
- C. 为了给顾客留下良好的印象，需要提高宾馆前台的服务质量。

53. I think it would be necessary to have another meeting to talk about our further business cooperation.

- A. 我认为只有讨论了下一步的生产后，我们才需要见面。
- B. 我认为必须要开会，以便进一步讨论我们之间的联系。
- C. 我认为有必要再次开会，商谈我们进一步的业务合作。

54. It took half an hour for her to understand thoroughly all the items in the contract.

- A. 半个小时已足够她就合同中的内容进行逐一核对。
- B. 她花了半个小时才彻底弄明白合同上的全部条款。
- C. 她只用了半个小时来逐一研究会同上的各项内容。

55. We couldn't have succeeded in the market competition without your strong support.

- A.若不是得到了你们的大力支持，我们就不会参与市场竞争。
- B.若无你们强有力的支持，我们在市场竞争中本不可能成功。
- C.因为你们的支持强大有力，我们有信心在市场竞争中获胜。

56. Thank you for your letter and resume of April 16<sup>th</sup>. I have sent your resume to the proper department, and it will be considered soon.

We will get in touch with you and possibly arrange an interview with you some day next week. If there is no suitable position for you at present, we'll also let you know as soon as possible. Thank you for your interest in our company.

#### **Part IV Writing 10%**

**Directions:** For this part you are required to write a letter based on the following information given in Chinese.

Remember to write your letter in the space given on the Translation/ **Writing Sheer**.

说明：假设你是项目经理 Jane Hart。根据以下内容给 John Smith 先生写封信。写信时间为 2020 年 7 月 25 日。信的内容包含：

1. 感谢他上周发来的邮件；
2. 告诉他工程进度很顺利，有可能提前完成；
3. 对当地员工的培训还未完成，预计下月底可结束；
4. 随信附上一份参加培训的员工名单。

请注意信函格式！

# 2020 专升本英语答案

## Part I. Vocabulary & structure 25%

1-5 DBABC 6-10 DDCBA 11-15 CDBCA 16-20 DADAC 21-25 BDABC

## Part II Reading Comprehension 50%

26-30 BACCD 31-35 BDABA 36-40 ACBDC 41-45 ADBDC

46.8 47.injury 48.many stores 49. \$ 15and \$ 100 50.shoulder

## Part III Translation — English into Chinese 15%

51-55 BACBB

56.感谢您 4 月 16 日的来信和寄来的简历。我已经把您的简历给到合适的部门，很快会对简历进行考虑。我们将与您联系，并可能在下周的某一天安排您面试。如果目前没有合适的职位，我们也会第一时间通知您。感谢您对我们公司感兴趣。

## Part IV Writing 10%

Dear John Smith

How is it going? Thank you for the e-mail you sent to me last week. And I also have some information to share with you. The first thing I want to tell you is that the project is going smoothly and it will probably be accomplished in advance. Then, another thing is that the training for the local employees hasn't been finished yet. It is expected to finish by the end of next month. Attached is a list of the employees attending the training, please have a check.

I am looking forward to your reply soon.

Have a nice day.

Yours sincerely, Jane Hart

# 知识点总结

## 第一章 基础启蒙

### 第一节、基础词类

#### 【教学目标】

1. 认识英语的十大词类
2. 能够辨别句子中每个词的词性
3. 能分清实词和虚词

#### 【知识点拨】

根据词的形式、意义及其在句中的功用将词分为若干类，叫做词类。学一个词，既要学它的发音、拼法、意义，也要知道它的类别。

英语中的词通常分为十大类：

1. 名词 (noun, 缩写为 n.) 是人和事物的名称，如：pen (钢笔), apple (苹果), people (人)。
2. 代词 (pronoun, 缩写为 pron.) 是用来代替名词的词，如：we (我们), his (他的), all (全部)。
3. 形容词 (adjective, 缩写为 adj.) 用来修饰名词，如：great (伟大的), honest (诚实的), difficult (困难的)。
4. 数词 (numeral, 缩写为 num.) 是表示“多少”和“第几”的词，如：four (四), eighteen (十八), first (第一), eighth (第八), hundred (一百)。
5. 动词 (verb, 缩写为 v.) 表示动作和状态，如：write (写), walk (行走), think (想)。
6. 副词 (adverb, 缩写为 adv.) 是修饰动词、形容词和副词的词，如：quickly (快), often (经常), very (很)。
7. 冠词 (article, 缩写为 art.) 说明名词所指的人或物的词，英语中的冠词有：a, an (一个), the (这, 那)。
8. 介词 (preposition, 缩写为 prep.) 表示名词 (或代词) 与句子里其它词的关系，如：from (从), in (在……内), between (在……之间)。
9. 连词 (conjunction, 缩写为 conj.) 是连接词、短语、从句和句子的词，如：and (和), because (因为), if (假如)。
10. 感叹词 (interjection, 缩写为 int.) 表示感情，如：oh (噢), aha (啊哈), hush (嘘)。

#### 【注意】

(1) 属于前六类 (名、代、形、数、动、副词) 的词都有实义，叫做实词 (notional word)。属于后四类 (冠、介、连、感叹词) 的词没有实义，叫做虚词 (form word)。

(2) 不少词可以属于几个词类，如 work (动词和名词), fast (形容词和副词), since (连词和介词)

## 第二节、 句子成分

### 【教学目标】

1. 认识七种主要的句子成分
2. 能够辨别句子中的成分
3. 了解哪种成分能由哪类词充当

### 【知识点拨】

一个句子由各个功能不同的部分所构成，这些部分叫做句子成分。英语的句子主要由主语部分与谓语部分组成。具体地讲，主要有下列七种句子成分：

1. 主语(subject)，它是句子所要说明的人或事物，是一个句子的主体。名词和代词等可以做主语。

如：I study English. (我学习英语)中的 I。

2. 谓语(predicate verb)，它是说明主语的动作或状态的，动词做谓语。如：study English 中的 study。

3. 表语(predicative)，它是放在连系动词之后表示主语的身份或特征的词，名词、代词和形容词都可以做表语。如：I am a student. (我是一个学生)中的 student；Our classroom is clean. (我们的教室

很干

净)中的 clean。

4. 宾语(object)，它是表示及物动词动作的对象的，名词和代词等可以做宾语。如：I study English.

中的 English。介词后面的名词或代词，叫做介词的宾语，如：They talk with me. (他们和我谈论)中的 me，就是介词 with 的宾语。

5. 定语(attribute)，它是限定或修饰名词或代词用的，形容词等做定语。如：He likes to drink cold milk.(他喜欢喝冷牛奶)中的 cold。

6. 状语(adverbial)，它是修饰动词、形容词、副词用的，副词和介词短语等做状语。如：He works hard. (他努力工作)中的 hard。

7. 补语(complement)，包括宾语补足语和主语补足语。宾语补足语简称宾补，有些及物动词除了有一个直接宾语外，还要有一个宾语补足语，说明宾语的身份和状态，以补充宾语其意义不足，使句子的意义更完整。如：①We elected him monitor. (我们把他选为班长)中的 monitor；②Don't keep the lights burning. (不要让灯一直亮着)中的 burning。主语补足语是对主语的补充说明，简称主补。如：③He was elected monitor. (他被选为班长)中的 monitor；④He was advised to teach the lazy boy a lesson 。。

(他被建议给那个懒惰的小男孩一些教训)中的 to teach the lazy boy a lesson。

### 【注意】

虚词在句子中一律不能单独作句子成分。

在一个英语句子中，最必不可少的成分就是主语和谓语，口语中除外。在考试中，完形填空等题型有可能会涉及这方面的内容，这时需要看句子中缺少什么成分，如果句中缺少主语，那一定不能选形容词和动词。

## 第三节、 句子种类

### 【教学目标】

- 1.认识常见的四类句子：陈述句、疑问句、祈使句、感叹句。
- 2.了解疑问句的四种类型。
- 3.重点掌握五种简单句句型、并列句和复合句。

### 【知识点拨】

- 1.英语句子按语气和使用目的可分为四类：陈述句、疑问句、祈使句和感叹句。
- 2.按语法结构可分为三种类型：简单句、并列句和复合句。

### 一、按语气用途分类

#### 1. 陈述句

陈述句用来陈述一件事情、表示一种看法或者表达一种心情，句末用“.”号，通常用降调。可分为肯定句和否定句两种形式。

(1) 句子的谓语动词是 be 动词时，或含有助动词 be(am, is, are, was, were), have, has, will 或情态动词 can 等时，要变为否定句，只需要直接在这些词后面加 not。如：

Lily has already read this new book. (改为否定句)

Lily \_\_\_\_\_ this new book \_\_\_\_\_.

Thomas will go to the party, too. (改为否定句)

Thomas \_\_\_\_\_ go to the party, \_\_\_\_\_.

(2) 句子的谓语动词是行为动词时，要变为否定句，必须在谓语动词前加助动词，一般现在时加助动词 do，第三人称单数加 does，一般过去时加 did，再和 not 构成否定结构。必须注意：don't, doesn't, didn't 后都用动词原形。如：

The children had a good time at the party. (改为否定句)

The children \_\_\_\_\_ a good time at the party.

Rose didn't drink any milk this morning. (改为肯定句)

Rose \_\_\_\_\_ milk this morning.

### 【注意】

(1) 肯定句变成否定句时，句子中的个别词语需要变化。

肯定句	否定句
already	yet
some, something, somebody	any, anything, anybody
all, both	none, neither
too	either

(2) 有些句子是半否定句，因为句子里含有否定词 hardly, scarcely, little, few, seldom, rarely 等。

如

I hardly see anything in the room. = I can see little in the room.

“all/both/every/each/+谓语+not”表示部分否定，“有的是，有的不是”。

All of them are not students. = Some of them are students, some are not.

(3) 宾语从句的否定形式

用在 think, believe, suppose 引导的宾语从句里则否定主句。

I don't think he'll come. = He will not come, I think.

## 2. 疑问句

疑问句是用来提出问题的句子。疑问句分为四种：一般疑问句、特殊疑问句、选择疑问句和反意疑问句。

### (1) 一般疑问句

以 be 动词, have /has/do 等助动词, can/may 等情态动词开头, 以 yes 或 no 回答的问句。基本结构: Be/Have/Has/Did 等助动词 (包括情态动词) + 主语 + 谓语 (包括表语) + ...?

① 陈述句的谓语动词中含有 be 动词、助动词、情态动词时, 只要直接把这些词置于句首, 句末改成问号即可。如:

There's something wrong with his bike. (改成疑问句)

\_\_\_\_\_ wrong with his bike?

② 陈述句的谓语动词是行为动词时, 必须在句首加上助动词 Do / Does (三单) / Did (过去式), 加上这些助动词后, 句子中谓语动词必须用原形。

Edison built a science lab himself when he was ten. (改成一般疑问句)

\_\_\_\_\_ Edison \_\_\_\_\_ a science lab himself when he was ten?

Those Japanese like Chinese food. (改成一般疑问句)

\_\_\_\_\_ those Japanese \_\_\_\_\_ Chinese food?

### (2) 特殊疑问句

以疑问代词或疑问副词开头, 提出疑问的句子。基本结构: 特殊疑问词 + 一般疑问句语序。但是如果疑问词在句子中做主语或做主语的定语, 就用特殊疑问词 + 陈述句语序。常用的疑问词有:

what, who (whom), whose, which, when, where, how, why 等, 回答时针对问句中的代词和副词来回答, 不用 yes 或 no 来回答。请就下面句子的划线部分提问:

例: ① The twins were making a kite when their mother came in.

What were the twins doing when their mother came in?

② Mrs. Turner asked her son to buy some eggs for supper.

\_\_\_\_\_ Mrs. Turner ask her son \_\_\_\_\_ ?

③ I'm going to take the shirt on the right.

\_\_\_\_\_ are you going to take?

④ The pupils are having a picnic at the foot of the hill.

\_\_\_\_\_ the pupils having a picnic?

⑤ Xiao Cheng didn't go to the farm with us because he was ill.

\_\_\_\_\_ Xiao Cheng go to the farm with you?

⑥ I paid fifty yuan for the sweater.

\_\_\_\_\_ did you pay for the sweater?

⑦ I've worked in that factory for two years.

\_\_\_\_\_ you worked in that factory?

⑧He called me twice the day before yesterday.

\_\_\_\_\_ did he call you the day before yesterday?

⑨Jane and her brother will finish the work in two hours.

\_\_\_\_\_ Jane and her brother finish the work?

⑩It's about two kilometers from here to the country.

\_\_\_\_\_ from here to the country?

### (3) 选择疑问句

指提问者提供两种或两种以上情况，让对方从中作出选择的句子。基本结构：一般疑问句+or+一般疑问句(后一部分与前一部分相同的成分常常省略)。回答时，不用 yes 或 no 回答，而是选择其中一种回答。

Would you like chicken or beef? I'd like beef.

Are they sitting or standing in the classroom? They are standing now.

Meimei likes boating. (用 swim 改成选择疑问句)

\_\_\_\_\_ Meimei \_\_\_\_\_ boating \_\_\_\_\_?

### (4) 反意疑问句

提出情况和看法来问对方是否同意的句子。它由两部分构成：前一部分是对事物的陈述，后一部分是简短的附加问句。如果前一部分是肯定形式，后一部分通常用否定形式；如果前一部分是否定形式，后部分通常用肯定形式。两部分的人称和时态必须一致。附加问句的主语应用相应的代词，不能用名词。附加问句动词的否定应用缩略形式。

Bill's sister is going to work in Paris next month. (改成反意疑问句)

Bill's sister is going to work in Paris next month, \_\_\_\_\_?

The Reads don't enjoy living in China. (改成反意疑问句)

The Reads don't enjoy living in China, \_\_\_\_\_?

①对于反意疑问句的回答，不管问题的提法如何，若事实是肯定的，则用 yes 来回答，事实是否定的，则要用 no 回答。

e.g. Li Lei never goes to school late, does he? 李雷上学从不迟到，是吗？

不，他迟到。(事实是迟到的，则用 yes 回答：Yes, he does.)

是的，从不迟到。(事实是不迟到，则用 no 回答：No, he doesn't.)

②反意疑问句中要注意有些词的缩略形式。

's 既是 has 也是 is 的缩略形式，'d 既是 would 也是 had 的缩略形式。

He's already finished his homework. (改成反意疑问句)

He's already finished his homework, \_\_\_\_\_?

He's already a little weak in English. (改成反意疑问句)

He's already a little weak in English, \_\_\_\_\_?

He's often told to come here. (改成反意疑问句)

He's often told to come here, \_\_\_\_\_?

③含有从句的情况。

含有 think, believe, suppose, imagine, expect 等动词后接宾语从句构成的主从复合句在构成反意疑问句时，视情况不同有两种不同的构成方式。(即当主句是 I think, I believe, I suppose, I imagine, I expect, I guess 时要反问从句，其余句式均反问主句。)

a. 当主句的主语为第一人称时，其后的简短问句应与从句相一致。例如：

I expect our English teacher will be back this weekend, won't she/he?

We suppose you have finished the project, haven't you?

值得注意的是，当这些动词后接的宾语从句的否定转移到主句时，其仍属否定句，故其后的简短问句应用肯定式，而非否定式。例如：

I don't believe that he can translate this book, can he?

We don't imagine the twins have arrived, have they?

此类句子的回答同“前否后肯”型反意疑问句一样，如上述后一个句子，若双胞胎已经到了，则回答为 Yes, they have., 若尚未到达，使用 No, they haven't.。

b. 当主句的主语为第二、三人称时，其后的简短问句则应与主句相一致（此时，否定只看主句，与从句无关）。例如：

Your sister supposes she needs no help, doesn't she?

You thought they could have completed the project, didn't you?

They don't believe she's an engineer, do they?

She doesn't expect that we are coming so soon, does she?

c. 但如果主句的时态是过去时等等，疑问句应和主句的人称时态保持一致。

They said that they would call us. (改成反意疑问句)

They said that they would call us, \_\_\_\_\_ \_\_\_\_\_?

④反意疑问句注意点:

是"there be"结构时	疑问部分用 there, 省略主语代词	There is something wrong with your watch, isn't there?
含有有否定前缀的词时	不能视为否定词, 其反意疑问句仍用不定形式	It is impossible, isn't it? He is not unkind to his classmates, is he?
must 在表"推测"时	根据其推测的情况来确定反意疑问句	He must be there now, isn't he? It must be going to rain tomorrow, won't it?

3.感叹句

用来表达喜、怒、哀、乐等强烈感情的句子叫做感叹句, 句末用感叹号。一般用感叹词 how 或 what 引导, how 修饰形容词或副词, what 修饰名词。

(1) how 引导的感叹句

基本结构是: How + 形容词/副词 + 主语 + 谓语! (主谓可省略)

How beautiful the park is!

(2) what 引导的感叹句

基本结构是: What + a/an + 形容词 + 可数名词 (单数) + 主语 + 谓语! (主谓可省)

陈述部分的特点	疑问部分的特点	例句
主语是 I, 谓语是系动词 am 时	疑问部分要	I'm as tall as your sister, aren't I?
谓语是 wish 时	疑问部分要	I wish to have a word with you, may I?
含有 no, nothing, nobody, never, few, seldom, hardly, rarely, little 等否定含义的词时	疑问部分用肯定含义	The Swede made no answer, did he / she?
含有 ought to 且陈述部分是肯定的	疑问部分用 shouldn't	He ought to know what to do, oughtn't he? / shouldn't he?
有 have to + v. (had to + v.) 时	疑问部分常用 don't + 主语	We have to get there at eight tomorrow, don't we?
谓语是 used to + v. 时	疑问部分用 didn't + 主语	He used to take pictures there, didn't he? / usedn't he?
谓语是 had better + v. 时	疑问句部分	You'd better read it by yourself, hadn't you?
谓语是 would rather + v. 时	疑问部分多	He would rather read it ten times than recite it,
谓语是 You'd like to + v. 时	疑问部分	You'd like to go with me, wouldn't you?
感叹句中	疑问部分	What wonderful colors, aren't they?
含	疑问部分根据其	Neither you nor I am engineer, are we?
主语是指示代词或不定代词 everything, that, nothing, this 时	疑问部分主语用 it	Everything is ready, isn't it?
主语是不定代词 everybody, anyone, somebody, nobody, no one 等时	疑问部分常用复数 they, 有时也用单数 he	Everyone knows the answer, don't they? (doesn't he?) Nobody knows about it, do they? (does he?)
含有情态动词 dare 或 need 时	疑问部分常用 need (dare) + 主语	We need not do it again, need we? He dare not say so, dare he?

What + 形容词 + 可数名词复数 (或不可数名词) + 主语 + 谓语!

What a nice girl (she is)!

What beautiful flowers they are!

### 【注意】

What 感叹不可数名词时，名词前面不能加不定冠词 a/an。如：

What a good news it is! [×]

What bad weather!

What hard work!

What delicious food!

### 【现场训练】

用 what(a/an) 或 how 来完成下面的句子：

\_\_\_\_\_ good girl she is!

\_\_\_\_\_ carefully they are listening to the teacher!

\_\_\_\_\_ interesting book he has in his hand!

\_\_\_\_\_ useful information he gave us!

\_\_\_\_\_ friendly she is to everyone!

\_\_\_\_\_ wonderful time we have had!

## 4. 祈使句

表示请求、命令、建议或劝告等的句子叫祈使句，主语通常省略。

祈使句的肯定形式：一般以动词原形开头。如：Open the door, please.

祈使句的否定形式：在句首谓语动词前加 Don't。如：Don't be late for class.

说话对象是第一人称和第三人称时，表示建议做某事。

(1) “祈使句 + and/or + 简单句”是常用句型

祈使句 + and + 简单句 表示“如果……，就……”

祈使句 + or + 简单句 表示“……，否则……”

Go down the street, and you'll see a hospital.

Be quick, or we'll be late.

(2) 在祈使句后面，常常附加一个问句，使语气更加委婉。

Tell me about it, will you/won't you?

Don't tell anyone, will you?

Let's go to school, shall we?

Let us go out to play for a while, will you?

\_\_\_\_\_ on the thin ice. It's dangerous. (用 skate 的适当形式填空)

Let's fly the kite on the playground, \_\_\_\_\_? (附加问句)

Please turn down the radio a bit, \_\_\_\_\_? (附加问句)

## 二、按语法结构分类

根据语法形式，即句子的结构，英语的句子可分为简单句 (simple sentence)，并列句 (compound sentence) 和复合句 (complex sentence)。

### 1. 简单句

英语中，只含有一个主谓结构并且句子各成分都只由单词或短语构成的独立句子或分句叫做简单句。我们可以给句子的动词加上副词修饰，给名词加上形容词、介词短语修饰，给句子加上状语进行修饰等，使句子的意思变得更丰富和充实。但都只有一个主谓结构。如：

He worked hard all his life. (划线部分均为状语，hard 修饰动词 worked, all his life 修饰整个句子)

简单句的五种基本句型可以简写为：

基本句型一：S+V (主+谓) The man cried.

基本句型二：S+V+P (主+系+表) Her face turned red.

基本句型三：S+V+DO (主+谓+宾) We comforted him.

基本句型四：S+V+IO+DO (主+谓+间宾+直宾) He gave us some food.

基本句型五：S+V+DO+OC (主+谓+宾+宾补) He found the work half done.

### (1) 主语+谓语

在这种句型中，谓语一定是实义动词，这种句型简称为主谓结构，其谓语一般都是不及物动词。这种句型常与副词、介词短语、不定式、分词等状语一起连用。

主语	谓语 (及物动词)	状语
Things	change.	
We	are working.	
Birds	sing	beautifully.
We	stopped	to have a rest.

### (2) 主语+连系动词+表语

这种句型称为主系表结构，其实连系动词在形式上也是一种谓语动词，但实质上和表语一起构成了谓语部分。如：

主语	系动词	表语
I	am	a teacher.
The milk	went	sour.
She	became	a lawyer.

### (3) 主语+谓语+宾语

这种句型可称为主谓宾结构，它的谓语一般多是及物动词，作宾语的可以是名词、代词、非谓语动词等

主语	谓语 (及物动词)	宾语
I	like	music.
They	want	to help him.
I	don't know	what to do.
My sister	will fix	everything.

### (4) 主语+谓语+宾语+宾语

这种句型可称为主谓宾结构，其谓语应是可有双宾语的及物动词，两个宾语一个是间接宾语，一个是直接宾语，其中指物或指事的就是直接宾语，指人（或动物）的就是间接宾语。

主语	谓语	间宾	直宾
She	sent	me	some books.
Dad	bought	me	a pair of shoes.

I	will write	you	long letter.
---	------------	-----	--------------

直接宾语和简介宾语的位置可以互换，但是间接宾语在后面时，需有介词来引导

主语	谓语	直宾	间宾
She	sent	some books	to me.
Dad	bought	a pair of shoes	for me.
He	donated	some money	to the poor.

### (5) 主语+谓语+宾语+宾补

宾语补足语就是补充说明前面的宾语，这种句型可简称为主谓宾补结构，其补语是宾语补语，与宾语一起即构成复合宾语。总结：作宾语补足语的有名词、形容词、介词短语、不定式、-ing 分词、-ed 分词

主语	谓语	宾语	宾语补足语
We	named	our baby	Tom.
She	always keeps	everything	in good order.
Mike	tried to make	himself	understood.
I	heard	her	singing.

#### 【注意】

(1) 有时两个或更多的并列主语拥有一个共同的谓语，甚至并列有两个主语和两个谓语，这样的句子仍然是简单句。如：

China and other countries in the east Asia are developing rapidly.

(China and other countries 并列主语)

Mr. Wang and I often work together and help each other.

(work and help 并列谓语)

(2) 有时候 it 经常作为形式主语或形式宾语用来平衡句子的结构。如：

主语+ 谓语+ it + 宾补+宾语: The exam makes it possible for me to be a CEO.

It + is + adj.+ for + sb to do sth.: It is possible for me to be a CEO by passing the exam.

## 2. 并列句

并列句是由两个或两个以上的简单句连接而成。并列句中的各简单句意义同等重要，相互之间没有从属关系，是平行并列的关系。它们之间用连词连接。常见的并列连词有 and, but, so, or 等。句型：简单句+并列连词+简单句

You help him and he helps you.

The future is bright, but the road is tortuous.

I liked the story very much but Li Ming wasn't interested in it.

Hurry up, or you'll be late.

(1) 表示连接两个同等的概念，常用 and, not only...but also..., neither...nor...等连接。

The teacher's name is Smith, and the student's name is John.

(2) 表示选择，常用的连词有 or, either...or..., otherwise 等。

Hurry up, or you'll miss the train.

(3) 表示转折，常用的连词有 but, yet, while 等。

He was a little man with thick glasses, but he had a strange way of making his classes lively and

interesting.

(4) 表示因果关系，常用的连词有 so, for 等。

August is the time of a year for rice harvest, so every day I work from dawn to dark.

### 3. 复合句

复合句指的是含有一个或一个以上从句的句子。从句包括名词性从句（主语从句、宾语从句、表语从句和同位语从句）、定语从句和状语从句等。句型：主句+连接词+从句；或连接词+从句+主句

The foreign visitors took a lot of pictures when they were at the Great Wall.

复合句就是含有两个或两个以上主谓结构的句子。这种结构中，必定有一个主谓结构是句子的主句部分，而另一个主谓结构则是句子的次要部分，即从句部分。

As is known to all, China is getting more and more powerful. (As 引导定语从句)

Where there is a will, there is a way. (Where 引导一个表地点的状语从句)

# 第二章 词法透析

## 第一节、 名词

★ 要点提示:

可数名词与不可数名词

常用的修饰名词的限定词

一些常见名词的不规则单复数变化

名词的所有格('s / of)及双重所有格(of + 's / of + 名词性物主代词)

【知识点拨】

### 一、 可数名词与不可数名词

名词可以分为专有名词 (Proper Nouns) 和普通名词 (Common Nouns)。

#### (一) 专有名词

专有名词是国名、地名、人名、团体、机构名称; 如: America, Paris, Obama, ICRC (International Committee of the Red Cross)。

#### (二) 普通名词

普通名词是一类人或东西或是一个抽象概念的名词。普通名词又可分为下面四类:

(1) 个体名词 (Individual Nouns): 表示某类人或东西中的个体, 如: student, pen, desk, book, bike。

(2) 集体名词 (Collective Nouns): 表示若干个个体组成的集合体, 如: family, class, people, school。

(3) 物质名词 (Material Nouns): 表示无法分为个体的实物, 如: air, water, paper。

(4) 抽象名词 (Abstract Nouns): 表示动作、状态、品质、感情等抽象概念, 如: work, time, news。

个体名词和集体名词可以用数目来计算, 称为可数名词 (Countable Nouns), 物质名词和抽象名词一般无法用数目计算, 称为不可数名词 (Uncountable Nouns)。

### 二、 修饰名词的限定词

1. 只能修饰可数名词单数的限定词, 其谓语部分常用单数

a(n), one, another, each, every, either, neither, many a, such a

2. 只能修饰可数名词复数的限定词, 其谓语部分常用复数

many, a (great) number of, several, both, two, three..., another two/three..., a couple of, (a) few, these, those

3. 只能修饰不可数名词的限定词, 其谓语部分常用单数

much, a great deal of, a large amount of, little

4. 既能修饰可数名词又能修饰不可数名词, 其谓语单复数视具体名词的单复数而定

a lot of, lots of, plenty of, some, most, all

### 三、 可数名词的单复数

可数名词分为单数名词和复数名词。名词单数就是该词本身，要表示一个以上概念时，要用名词复数形式，只有可数名词本身才有复数形式，而不可数名词本身没有复数形式，需要添加量词才能变复数，其变化规则如下：

### (一) 规则名词的复数形式

规则		例词
一般名词直接在词尾加-s		map-maps, book-books, girl-girls, eye-eyes
以 s, x, ch, sh 结尾的名词后加-es		class-classes, box-boxes, watch-watches, dish-dishes
以-f 或-fe 结尾的词	变-f 或-fe 为 v 再加-es	leaf-leaves, thief-thieves, knife-knives, loaf-loaves, wife-
	直接加-s	belief-beliefs, chief-chiefs, proof-proofs, roof-roofs
以辅音字母加 y 结尾的名词，变 y 为 i 加-s		party-parties, family-families, story-stories, city-cities
以元音字母加 y 结尾的名词，或专有名词以 y 结尾的，加-s		toy-toys, boy-boys, day-days, ray-rays, Henry-Henrys
以-o 结尾的名词	以-o 结尾的名词变为复数时，常在词尾加-s，但下列名词要加-es，它们是：黑人英雄爱吃土豆、西红柿	radio-radios, photo-photos, Negro-Negroes, hero-heroes, potato-potatoes, tomato-tomatoes
以-th 结尾的名词加-s		truth-truths, mouth-mouths, month-months, path-paths

### (二) 不规则名词的复数形式

规则		例词
单复数不同形		man-men, woman-women, foot-feet, goose-geese, mouse-mice tooth-teeth, child-children, ox-oxen
单复数同形		sheep, deer, series, means, works, fish, species
只有复数形式		ashes, trousers(裤子), clothes, thanks, goods, glasses(眼镜), compasses(圆规), scissors(剪刀), arms(武器)
一些集体名词总是用作复数		people, police, cattle, staff, army
部分集体名词既可以作单数(整体)也可以作复数(成员)		audience, class, family, crowd, couple, group, committee, government, population, crew, team, public, enemy, party
复数形式表示特别含义		customs(海关), forces(军队), times(倍, 次, 时代), spirits(情绪), drinks(饮料), sands(沙滩), papers(文件报纸), manners(礼貌), looks(外表), brains(头脑智力), greens(青菜), ruins(废墟), glasses(眼镜), works(工厂, 作品), woods(森林),
表示“某国人”	加-s	Americans, Australians, Germans, Greeks, Swedes, Europeans
	单复数同形	Swiss, Chinese, Japanese
	以-man 或-woman 结尾	Englishmen, Frenchwomen

合成 名词	将主体名词变为 复数	sons-in-law, lookers-on, passers-by, story-tellers, boy friends
	无主体名词时将 最后一部分变为复数	grown-ups, good-for-nothings(饭桶), go-betweens(中间人)

**【注意】**

(1) “man / woman+n.”的复数形式

man / woman+n.变为复数时，作定语的名词和中心词都要变复数。如：

a man teacher 一个男教师 → ten men teachers 十个男教师

(2) 不可数名词的复数形式

不可数名词通常没有复数形式，但可以借助单位量词表示一定的数量

单数-复数	说明
a piece of paper —— two pieces of paper a cup of tea —— two cups of tea a glass of water —— two glasses of water	1. 不可数名词后不能加-s/es 2. 如果要表示复数，只能加量词，把量词变复数

**四、名词的所有格**

名词在句中表示所有（属）关系的语法形式叫做名词所有格。所有格分两种：一是由名词词尾加’s构成，二是由介词 of 加名词构成。前者多表示有生命的东西，后者多表示无生命的东西。

**(一) ’s 所有格的构成**

(1) 单数名词词尾加“’s”，复数名词词尾没有 s，也要加“’s”，如：the boy’s bag 男孩的书包，men’s room 男厕所。

(2) 若名词已有复数词尾-s，只在-s 后加“’”，如：the workers’struggle 工人的斗争。

(3) 在表示店铺或教堂的名字或某人的家时，名词所有格的后面常常不出现它所修饰的名词，如：The barber’s 理发店。

(4) 如果两个名词并列，并且分别有“’s”，则表示“分别有”，如：Jane’s and Mary’s fathers；  
只有一个“’s”，则表示“共有”，如：Jane and Mary’s father。

(5) 复合名词或短语，“’s”加在最后一个词的词尾，如：a month or two’s absence.

**(二) of 所有格的用法**

of 所有格由 of 加名词短语构成，用“名词+of+名词”的结构来表示所有关系，多用于无生命的东西。如：  
the cover of the book; the title of the song.

**(三) 双重所有格的用法**

双重所有 格的 形式	of+名词所有格	a friend of my brother’s
	of+名词性物主代词	a necklace of yours
双重所有 格的 特征	①双重所有格所修饰的名词通常和不定冠词	This is a book of my father’s.
	a 及 any, some, no, few, several 等表示数量的词连用，但不可以和定冠词 the 连用。	Have you read any books of Einstein’s? Some friends of my brother’s have arrived. 不能说：the play of Shakespeare’s

②“of+名词所有格”中的名词一般表示人，不能表示物，该名词必须是特指的，不能是泛指的，不能与不定冠词连用。

a friend of the doctor's, some books of my brother's

不能说: a cover of the book's

## 第二节、冠词

冠词是虚词，本身不能单独使用，也没有词义，它用在名词的前面，帮助指明名词的含义。英语中的冠词有三种，一种是定冠词（the Definite Article），另一种是不定冠词（the Indefinite Article），还有一种是零冠词（Zero Article）。

不定冠词 a/an+单数名词

定冠词 the +单数名词/复数名词/不可数名词

零冠词+复数名词/不可数名词

★ 要点提示：

对 the 与 a, an 的理解（分清“特指”与“泛指”）

牢记只能用 the 或只能用零冠词的几种情况

【知识点拨】

### 一、不定冠词

不定冠词 a (an)与数词 one 同源，是“一个”的意思。a 用于辅音音素前，一般读作[ə]，而 an 则用于元音音素前，一般读做[æn]。

#### （一）概述

不定冠词用来修饰可数名词单数，指人或物中的某一个或某一类，但不具体说明是何人何物。

#### （二）用法

1. a 和 an 均用在单数名词前，指某一类人或事物	A plane is a machine that can fly.
2. 第一次提及某人某物，非特指	A boy is waiting for you.
3. 表示“每一”相当于 every, one	Take the medicine three times a day.
4. 指某一类人或事物中的任何一个	Pass me an apple, please.
5. 用于固定词组中	a bit, once upon a time, in a hurry, have a walk make a living; in a word; all of a sudden
6. 用于 quite, rather, many, half, what, such 之后	This room is rather a big one.
7. 用于 so (as, too, how)+形容词之后	She is as clever a girl as you can wish to meet.
8. 用于 most 之前，意思是“非常”	It is a most useful dictionary.
9. 用于序数词前，表示“又一”，“再一”	Can you give me a second chance?
10. 用于抽象名词前，使之具体化，表示与之相关的具体的人或事	He was a success in business.

【注意】

物质名词 coffee, food, tea, fog, rain, snow, wind 等，在表示“一种”或“一场”的意义时，前面要加不定冠词。

#### （三）a 和 an 在使用上的区别

原则上说，a 用于辅音开头的单词前；an 用于元音开头的单词前；

辅音前用 a, 如 a book, a student, a school, a house, a magazine 等;

元音前用 an, 如 an egg, an apple, an object, an idea, an ugly thing 等。

### 【注意】

(1) hour, honest, honor 等单词的拼写虽然以辅音字母 h 开头, 但其读音却以元音开头, 因此, 前面要用 an。

(2) 有些单词虽然以元音字母开头, 但其读音却以辅音开头, 那么它们的前面应用 a, 常见的有 useful, university, usual, European, united, one-eyed, one-way 等。

(3) 有些数字如 8(eight)、11(eleven)前也要用 an。

He has an 11-year-old daughter. 他有一个 11 岁大的女儿。

(4) 直接出现英文字母时, A、E、F、H、I、L、M、N、O、R、S、X 前面要用 an。

Our daughter sent us an SOS for some more money.

我们的女儿给我们发来了再要点钱的求救信号。

## 二、定冠词

定冠词 the 与指示代词 this, that 同源, 有“这(那)个”的意思, 但较弱, 可以和一个名词连用, 来表示某个或某些特定的人或东西。

### (一) 概述

区别于不定冠词, 定冠词具有确定的意思, 用以特指人或事物, 表示名词所指的人或事物是同类中的特定的一个, 以别于同类中其他的人或事物, 相当于汉语中的“那个”或“这个”的意思。它可以和单、复数名词连用, 也可以和不可数的名词连用。

1. 表示特指: 特指某(些)人或某(些)物	The book on the desk is an English novel.
2. 用于世上独一无二的事物名词前	the universe, the moon, the Pacific Ocean
3. 表示说话双方都了解的或上文提到过的人或事	Yesterday, John's father bought him a new bike. The bike cost him 200 yuan.
4. 用于乐器前面	play the violin, play the guitar
5. 用于形容词和分词前表示一类人	the living, the wounded
6. 用在姓氏复数前, 表示“一家人”或“夫妇”	the Greens, the Smiths
7. 用于序数词、形容词和副词的比较级、最高级前	He is the taller of the two children.
8. 用在某些由普通名词构成的国家名称、机关团体、组织机构、建筑物、报纸杂志、会议条约等名称前	the United States, the Communist Party of China, the Great Wall
9. 用于江河湖海、山脉群岛、海湾海峡等地理名词前	The West Lake is famous for its beautiful scenery.
10. 用在年代、朝代名词及逢十的数词(表某个年代)前或用在表示方位的名词前	the Tang dynasty; in the 1990's; the south
11. “动词+sb.+介词+the+身体某一部分”	She caught me by the arm.
12. 修饰 same, only, very 等形容词	Do you belong to the same class?
13. 用在某些固定短语中	in the end; make the best of; in the way; by the way; on

## (二) 用法

### 三、零冠词的用法

指名词前面没有不定冠词(a、an)、定冠词(the)，也没有其他限定词的现象。

1. 专有名词、物质名词、抽象名词等名词前	Peking University, Jack, China, love, air
2. 名词前有 this, my, whose, some, no, each, every 等限制	I want this book. / Whose purse is this
3. 季节、月份、星期、节假日、一日三餐前	March, Sunday, National Day, spring
4. 表职位、身份、头衔的名词作表语、补足语及同位语	Lincoln was made President of America.
5. 学科、语言、球类、棋类名词前	He likes playing football/chess.
6. 与 by 连用表示交通工具的名词前	by train, by air, by land
7. 以 and 连接的两个相对的名词并用时	husband and wife, knife and fork
8. 表示泛指的复数名词前	Horses are useful animals.
9. 在某些固定词组中	all kinds of; in case of; keep sth in mind; at first; at home

#### 零冠词的用法总结:

月、季、星期、节假、洲;

称呼、头衔、职务前;

三餐、球类、惯用语;

学科、棋类名词前。

### 四、冠词与形容词+名词结构

1. 两个形容词都有冠词，表示两个不同的事物。

He raises a black and a white cat 他养了一只黑猫和一只白猫。

2. 两个形容词中如后一个形容词无冠词，则指一物。

He raises a black and white cat. 他养了一只花猫。

## 第三节、数词和量词

★ 要点提示:

- ◇ 准确把握基数词和序数词的用法区别
- ◇ 重点掌握 dozen, score, hundred, thousand, million 等表示确切数目时的用法
- ◇ 准确把握修饰名词的量词及与谓语关系

【知识点拨】

### 一、数词

数词是指表示数目多少或顺序先后的词。表示数目多少的数词叫基数词，表示顺序先后的数词叫序数词。数词相当于名词和形容词，在句中可用作主语、宾语、表语、定语、同位语等。

#### (一) 基数词的用法要点

1. 逢整“十”的基数词的复数形式可用于表示某人的大约年岁。

如: Karl Marx began to learn Russian in his fifties. 马克思五十多岁开始学俄语。

2. 表示年代:

表示在某个世纪的几十年代，用“in the +逢十的基数词的复数”。基数词的复数若用阿拉伯数字表示，可直接加 s，也可加's。如“在 20 世纪 80 年代”是 in the 1980's 或 in the 1980s，读作 in the nineteen eighties。

3. 英语中的时刻是用基数词来表示的，最常见的形式有三种:

①先点钟，后分钟。如: 7:52 (seven fifty-two)

②先分钟，后点钟。

表示“分钟数不超半小时”，用“分钟数+past+钟点数”表示；如: 5:25 (twenty-five past five)。

表示“分钟数超过半小时”，用“(60-分钟数)+to+下一个钟点数”表示，即“差几分到几点”。

如: 10:43 (seventeen to eleven)。

③表示“整点”，直接用“钟点数 (+o'clock)”表示。“半点钟”用 half 表示，“一刻钟”用 a quarter 表示。如:

6:00 six (o'clock) 10:30 half past ten

4:45 a quarter to five 7:15 a quarter past seven

#### (二) 序数词的用法要点

1. 序数词前一般要加定冠词 the。

如: It's the third time I've been here. 这是我第三次到这里来。

2. 表示在原有的基础上增加，即“又一，再一”时，用不定冠词。

如: Shall I ask her a third time? 我还要问她一次吗?

3. 下列 4 种情况不用冠词:

①序数词前已有物主代词或名词所有格时，不能再用冠词。

如: This is Tom's second visit to China. 这是汤姆第二次访问中国。

②表示比赛或考试的名次时，通常省略定冠词。

如：He was (the) second in the English exam. 在这次英语考试中他得了第二名。

③序数词被用作副词时不用冠词。

如：I have to finish my homework first. 我得先把作业完成好。

④在某些习语中不用冠词。

如：at first 起初；first of all 首先；at first sight 乍一看。

### (三) 基数词变序数词的规则

1. 第 1 至第 19 一般是在基数词后加 th，但变化特殊的有：

one—first, two—second, three—third, five—fifth, eight—eighth, nine—ninth, twelve—twelfth。

2. 逢十的 twenty, thirty ... ninety, 分别改 y 为 ieth。

如：twenty—twentieth, ninety—ninetieth。

3. 表示第几十几或第几百几十几，只需将个位数改为序数词。

如：56—fifty-six—fifty-sixth, 635—six hundred and thirty-five—six hundred and thirty-fifth。

### (四) 分数的表达法

分数由基数词和序数词构成：分子用基数词，分母用序数词，当分子超过“1”时，分母用复数。

如：two thirds=2/3。

注：有时还可以用“分子（用基数词）+ in / out of +分母（用基数词）”这样的形式，如“三分之二”可表示为 two in / out of three。

### (五) hundred, thousand, million 用法要点

1. 当这些词与具体数字连用时，通常不加复数词尾-s，后也不接介词 of。如：

About three million workers were on strike. 参加罢工的大约有三百万工人。

2. 当这些词不与具体数字连用，而是表示不确定的泛指数时，则不仅要加复数词尾-s，而且后要接介词 of，然后才能接名词。

如：Millions (of people) are homeless. 千千万万的人无家可归。

注：若不出现名词，则不用介词 of。

3. 当这些词与 a few, several, many 等数目不具体的词连用时，带不带复数词尾-s 均可，但是注意：若不带复数词-s，其后的介词 of 可以省略；若带复数词尾-s，则其后介词 of 不能省略。

如：在那儿我见到了数百外宾。

正：There I saw several hundreds of foreign guests.

正：There I saw several hundred (of) foreign guests.

## 二、量词

通常用来表示人、事物或动作的数量单位的词，叫做量词。

### (一) 英语量词词组分类

类型	量词词组
表示定量	a couple of (一对), a cupful of (一满杯), a portion of (一份)等
表示不定量	a majority of (大多数, 大半), a spell of (一阵, 一段时间)等

表示大量	a flood of (一大批), a heap of (一大堆), a mountain of (大量的) 等
表示少量	a drop of (一滴, 一点), a particle of (一点), a shadow of (一点)等

(二) 修饰名词的量词

	量词	谓语动词
修饰 可数名词复数	a number of, numbers of, a few, few, a great many, a group of, an average of, a/the majority of, a total of, many, too many	复数
	the number of, the average of, the total of, a pair of	单数
修饰 不可数名词	a little, little, a great deal of, much, a large sum of, a large amount of, too much	单数
	large amounts of	复数
既可修饰可数名 词也 可修饰不可数名	some, any, a lot of, lots of, plenty of, large quantities of, a large quantity of, a variety of	取决于名词, 但 large quantities of+n 作主语

## 第四节、代词

代词是代替名词或起名词作用的短语或句子的词。

英语中代词分为：人称代词、物主代词、反身代词、指示代词、疑问代词、关系代词、连接代词和不定代词等等。

★ 要点提示：

- ◇ 代词的类别
- ◇ 常见不定代词的用法
- ◇ that 与 those 的用法比较
- ◇ it 与 that/one/so 的区别
- ◇ 固定结构

【知识点拨】

### 一、代词分类

人称代词	主格	I, you (你, 您), he, she, it, we, they
	宾格	me, you (你, 您), him, her, it, us, them
物主代词	形容词性	my, your, his, her, its, our, their
	名词性	mine, yours, his, hers, its, ours, theirs
反身代词		myself, yourself, himself, herself, itself, ourselves, yourselves, themselves
指示代词		this, that, these, those, such
疑问代词		who, whom, whose, which, what, whoever, whichever, whatever
关系代词		that, which, who, whom, whose, as
不定代词		one/ some/ any, each/ every, none/ no, many/ much, few/ little/ a few/ a little
		other/ another, all/ both, neither/ either
复合不定代词		some, any, every, no 都能和 one, body, thing 一起构成复合不定代词

### 二、代词用法

#### (一) 人称代词

人称代词是指直接指代人或者事物的代词，在句子中作主语或宾语。它们有人称、数、格的形式变化，第三人称单数的人称代词还有性别的不同。人称代词分为主格和宾格两类。

1. 主格：主要用来作句子的主语，在正式文体中也可用作表语。

I often go shopping on Sundays. 星期天我常去购物。(作主语)

It is he that finished the work. 是他完成了工作。(作表语)

2. 宾格：主要用作宾语，在口语中也常用来作句子的表语。

Who teaches you English this year? 今年谁教你们英语?(作宾语)

— Who is knocking at the door? 是谁在敲门?

— It's me. 是我。(作表语)

### 【注意】

在口语中,若省略谓语及其他成分的短句中,人称代词宾格可用作主语。

— He has read the novel. —他看过这本小说。

— Me too. —我也看过。

## (二) 物主代词

表示所有关系的代词叫做物主代词,也叫人称代词的所有格。可分为形容词性物主代词和名词性物主代词两种。物主代词有人称和数的变化。第三人称单数的物主代词还有性别的变化。

1. 形容词性物主代词:相当于一个形容词,在句子中只能作句子的定语,对名词进行修饰和限制。

Is that your umbrella? 那是你的伞吗?

I often go to see my aunt on Sundays. 我经常在星期天去看望我的阿姨。

2. 名词性物主代词:从意义上说,相当于“形容词性物主代词+名词”;它相当于一个名词,在句子中可作主语、宾语和表语。

Your English is better than my English.

= Your English is better than mine. 你的英语比我的好。

This is your cup, but where is mine? 这是你的杯子,可我的在哪儿?(表语)

Your classroom is very big, but ours is rather small.

你们的教室很大,而我们的相当小。(主语)

### 【注意】

英语中有许多习惯用语要用物主代词

do one's best 尽力	try one's best 尽力
earn one's bread 维持生活	hold one's breath 屏息
eat one's words 收回前言	in one's best 穿着节日盛装

有的习语不用物主代词均可,且意义相同,如 save (one's) face (挽回面子);而有的习语用不用物主代词均可,但意义不同,如 lose heart (丧失勇气)与 lose one's heart to sb. (倾心于某人)。

## (三) 反身代词

反身代词用于所强调的动作与动作执行者的关系,强调主语或宾语为同一人或物。在人称、性质、数上保持一致。比如:我自己、你自己、他自己、我们自己等等。

1. 作宾语:反身代词作宾语表示动作的承受者就是动作的执行者自己。

She teaches herself English on the radio.

2. 作同位语:反身代词作名词或者代词的同位语,起加强语气的作用。表示“亲自,本人”的意思。

The boy himself made the model plane.

3. 固定搭配

for oneself 给(为)自己,独自	to oneself 对自己
say to oneself 心里想	talk / speak to oneself 自言自语
come to oneself 苏醒过来	absent oneself 缺席

beside oneself 失常, 若狂	by oneself 独自地, 单独地
of oneself 独自, 自发地	help oneself 自取, 自便

#### (四) 疑问代词

用来构成疑问句的代词为疑问代词。一般而言, 疑问代词在句中位于谓语动词之前, 没有性和数的变化, 除 who (whom) 之外也没有宾格的变化。

英语中, 疑问代词主要有九个:

指人	who, whom, whose, whoever, whomever
指物	what, whatever
既可指人又可指物	which, whichever

#### 【注意】

##### 1. 特殊疑问句的语序

(1) 若疑问词作主语或作主语的定语, 即对主语或主语的定语提问, 其语序是陈述句的语序。如:

Who is singing in the room? (作主语)

Whose bike is broken? (作定语)

(2) 若疑问词作其他成分, 即对其他成分提问, 其语序是疑问词+一般疑问句。

What does she like? (作宾语)

##### 2. 疑问代词还可以引导名词性从句

Can you tell me whose blue shirt it is on the bed?

#### (五) 关系代词

代指定语从句中的先行词, 还可以在定语从句中担当主语、宾语、表语和定语的代词叫关系代词。

英语中, 关系代词主要有 that, which, who, whom, whose, as 等。关系代词有主格, 宾格和属格(所有格)之分, 并有指人与指物之分。

	限定性 指人	限定性 指物	非限定性 指物
主格	who/that	that/which	which
宾格	whom/that	that/which	which
属格	whose	of which/whose	of which/whose

Lily likes music that is quiet and gentle. 莉莉喜欢轻柔的音乐。

The film (which) we saw yesterday was wonderful. 我们昨天看的那部电影很好看。

#### (六) 指示代词

指示代词包括 this, that; these, those, 代替前文出现的人或物, 在句中可以作主语/宾语/表语/定语。

单数用 that 或 this, 复数用 those 或 these。

This is my bike, and that is her bike.

These books are yours.

You like this but I like that.

#### 【注意】

##### 1. that 和 those 的特殊用法

(1) that 用作替代词主要用于替代“the+单数名词(可数或不可数)”, 表特指。

His handwriting is like that of a much younger child.

他的笔迹像是一个年纪小得多的孩子的笔迹。

(2) those 用作替代词主要用于替代复数名词，表特指。

Studying Wendy's menu, I found that many of the items are similar to those of McDonald's.

研究温迪的菜单，我发现有许多名目类似于麦当劳的。

(3) that 和 those 可作定语从句的先行词，但 this 和 these 不能，同时，在作先行词的时候，只有 those 可以指人。

He admired that which looked beautiful. 他赞赏外表漂亮的東西。

He admired those who looked beautiful. 他赞赏那些外表漂亮的人。

## 2. it & that & one 的用法区别

one 表示泛指，that 和 it 表示特指。That 与所指名词为同类，但不是同一个，而 it 与所指名词为同一个。

it 特指上下文提到的是同一事物。

one 泛指上下文提及的同类事物中的一个，属于同一类而不是同一个事物。

that 常用在比较结构中，代替前面提到的名词，以避免重复。如：

Where is my new pen? I can't find it.

This apple is small. Please give me a big one.

This is my bike, and that is her bike.

### (七) 不定代词

不明确指代某个特定的人或事物的代词叫不定代词。英语中的不定代词常常成对出现，如 some

和 any, all 和 both, neither 和 either, each 和 every, other 和 another, much 和 many, one 和 no, none 和 no one, few 和 a few, little 和 a little 等等。

另外，还有由 some, any, every, no 与 body, one, thing, time 构成的复合不定代词 (somebody, anybody, everybody, nobody, someone, anyone, everyone, no one, something, anything, everything, nothing, sometime, anytime)。

#### 1. some & any

some (一些) 和 any (一些，任何) 都可修饰或指代可数名词和不可数名词。

some 一般用于肯定句，any 一般用于疑问句和否定句。

I must get some fruit in the market. 我得在市场上买点水果。

Do you have any books for children? 你有适合小孩子看的书吗？

#### 【注意】

(1) 当表示请求或要求并希望对方能给出肯定的回答时，some 也可用于疑问句；any 表示“任何的”之意时，也可用于肯定句。

Can you give me some paper? 你能给我些纸吗？

Would you like some bananas? 你想吃点香蕉吗？

You can read any of the books. 你可以看这些书中的任何一本。

(2) some 和 any 均不能跟冠词连用。

#### 2. each & every

(1) each 强调个体，指两者或两者以上的人或物，在句子中可用作主语、宾语，也可作定语（修饰单数可数名词）；

every 强调全体，只能指三者或三者以上的人或物，在句子中只能作定语，修饰单数可数名词。

Each (of us) has a present. 我们每个人都有礼物。

Every student has strong and weak points. 每个学生都有长处与短处。

(2) 两个用 and 连接的名词若受 each 或 every 修饰且用作主语时，其谓语依然用单数。

Every/Each boy and girl has one. 每个男孩和女孩都有一个。

(3) every 后接“数字或 few + 名词”可表示“每……”，而 each 一般不这样用。

He comes home every two weeks. 他每隔两周回家一次。

She visits her parents every few days. 她每隔几天看望她父母亲一次。

(4) every 可受 almost, nearly 等副词的修饰，但 each 却不能。

Almost every woman wants to be slim. 几乎每个女人都想要苗条的身材。

### 3. no one & nobody & none

	指代	用来回答	相当于	是否加 of 短语
nobody/no one	人	who	not anyone/not anybody	否
nothing	物	what	not anything	否
none	人或物	how many/how much	not a/an/any+名词或 no+名词	是

### 4. another & other & the other & others & the others

(1) another 指“又一个，另一个”，无所指，指三者或三者以上中的任何一个，用作代词或形容词。例如：

I don't like this shirt, please show me another (one).

The trousers are too long, please give me another pair / some others.

(2) other 泛指“另外的，别的”，只作定语，常与复数名词或不可数名词连用；但如果前面有 the, this, that, some, any, each, every, no, one 及 my, your, his 等时，则可与单数名词连用。例如：

Some students like football, while other students like basketball.

(3) others 是 other 的复数形式，泛指别的人或物（但不是全部），不可作定语。例如：

Some like football, while others like basketball.

(4) the other 表示“两者中的另一个”，常与 one 连用，构成 one...the other...“一个……另一个……”，作定语修饰复数名词时，表示“其余的全部”。例如：

I spend half of my holiday practicing English and the other half learning drawing.

(5) the others 特指其余的人或物，是 the other 的复数形式。例如：

Two boys will go to the zoo, and the others will stay at home.

### 5. both & all & either & any & neither & none 的用法

	都	任何	都不
两者	Both	Either	Neither
三者（以上）	All	Any	None

#### 【注意】

all 表示不可数名词时，其谓语动词用单数。both 和 all 加否定词表示部分否定，全部否定用 neither 和 none。

All of the books are not written in English.

= Not all of the books are written in English. 不是所有的书都是英文的。

Not both of us are teachers. 我俩不都是老师。

Either of us is a teacher. 我俩都是老师。

Neither of us is a teacher. 我俩都不是老师。

## 6. much & many

much 修饰或指代不可数名词, many 修饰或指代可数名词(复数)。

His name is familiar to many people. 许多人熟悉他的名字。

The children have too much homework to do. 孩子们的家庭作业太多了。

### 【注意】

many 的特殊用法:

(1) a great many 意为“许多”, 后接可数名词的复数, 谓语用复数。

(2) many a 后接单数可数名词, 相当于 many 后接复数名词, 如 many a time = many times (许多次), 谓语用单数。

## 7. few & a few

(1) few 形式上肯定, 意义上否定, 其意为“很少, 几乎没有”;

a few 表示肯定意义, 其意为“几个, 一些”。

两者都必须修饰或代替可数名词复数, 在句子中可用作主语、宾语、定语等。

Few apples remained on the tree. 树上没什么苹果了。

A few apples remained on the tree. 树上还剩有几个苹果。

(2) few 前若使用了定冠词、物主代词或其他限定词, 则不表示否定意义。

He was among the few who have read it. 他是少数读过它的人之一。

Her few possessions were sold after her death. 她那点财产死后就被卖掉了。

Some few of the survivors are still alive. 当时幸免于难的人有几个人还活着。

### 【注意】

以下几个短语, 形式不同, 意义大致相同:

quite a few = a good few = not a few 不少, 相当多

## 8. little & a little

little 形式上肯定而意义上是否定, 其意为“很少, 几乎没有”;

a little 表示肯定意义, 其意为“一些, 一点”。

两者均只用于修饰不可数名词, 在句子中可作主语、宾语、定语等。

I have little spare time. 我很少有空余时间。

I have a little spare time. 我有一点点空余时间。

We know little about his life. 我们对他的身世几乎一无所知。

We know a little about his life. 我们对他的身世知道一点点。

### 【注意】

不要弄错以下几个短语的意思:

what little 仅有的一点

a little = a little bit 少许, 少量的

not a little 不少的, 相当多的

### 三、固定结构

**1. nothing less than“不亚于，完全”。如：**

It was nothing less than a miracle. 那完全是个奇迹。

His negligence was nothing less than criminal. 他的粗心大意无异于犯罪。

**2. nothing more than“仅仅，不过是”。如：**

It was nothing more than a shower. 只不过下了场阵雨。

It is nothing more than a made-up story. 它只不过是杜撰的故事而已。

**3. anything but 为习语，意为“根本不是”。如：**

The party was anything but a success. 晚会根本不成功。

**4. nothing but 也是习语，意为“仅仅，只”。如：**

There is nothing but some waste paper in the desk. 课桌里只有些废纸。

**5. something of“可以说”。如：**

She is something of a doctor. She has saved many lives.

可以说她是一位医生。她救了很多人的命。

**6. something like “有点像，大约”。如：**

Your house is something like ours. 你们的房子有点像我们的。

They get something like 97% renewals every year. 他们每年大约有 97%的用户续订。

## 第五节、介词

★ 要点提示:

- ◇ 介词的分类
- ◇ 了解常用介词的区别
- ◇ 牢记常见的固定介词词组
- ◇ 准确把握重要介词的用法
- ◇ 辨析意义相近的介词

【知识点拨】

### 一、介词分类

简单介词	about, across, after, against, among, around, at, below, beyond, during, in, on
合成介词	inside, into, onto, out of, outside, throughout, upon, within, without
短语介词	according to, because of, instead of, up to, due to, owing to, thanks to
双重介词	from among, from behind, from under, till after, in between
分词转化成的介词	considering (就.....而论), including
形容词转化成的介词	like, unlike, near, next, opposite

### 二、常用介词区别

表示时间的 in, on, at	<p>1. at 表示具体时刻, 或者正午、黄昏: at 7:00; at noon 表示“在.....岁时”: She got married at seventeen.</p> <p>2. on 具体日期: 某年某月某日、星期、节日、特定的某天、具体的某天的早中晚: on Monday; on June 4th; on Children's day; on that day; on Sunday morning 但是以下情况例外: at night (在晚上); at Christmas (在圣诞节期间); on the morning/ afternoon/evening/night of a certain date. (在具体日期的早上/下午/傍晚/夜里)</p> <p>3. in 表示泛指时间: 年、月、世纪、四季、早中晚: in 2019; in 2018; in March; in the 21st century; in autumn; in the morning in + 一段时间, 指在未来的一段时间之内, 谓语动词用一般将来时: Your car will be mended in three hours. 短语: in /at the beginning=at first; in/at the end=at last</p>
---------------------	---

表示时间段的 since, from, for	<p>since 指从过去到现在的一段时间，和完成时连用： It has been two years since I last saw Tom.</p> <p>for 与时间段连用，表示行为或状态持续多久：I have lived there for almost 5 years.</p> <p>from 指从时间的某一点开始：Most people work from 9 a.m. to 5 p.m.</p>
表示地理位置的 in, on, at	<p>in+大地点：In Beijing; in China</p> <p>at+小地点：at home; at the station</p> <p>on 在.....的上面：on the street</p>
表示“穿过”的 through, across, over	<p>through 表示从内部通过，与 in 有关：go through the forest; Susan was walking through street after street with her friend in search of a nice wedding dress.</p> <p>across 表示从表面通过，与 on 有关： The child will go across the road after the lights turn green.</p> <p>over 表示越过、翻过： After they climbed over the hill, they found many flowers in the fields.</p>
表示“支持”、“反对”的 for, against	<p>against 意为“反对”，与某人采取对立的态度：Are you for or against the new road scheme? 此外，against 还有“倚靠，逆着，相反，在.....的衬托下，与.....比赛”等意思。 She was forced to marry against her will. That is against the law. The skier's red clothes stood out clearly against the snow.</p> <p>for 意思是“支持，赞成”，指在观点主张方面与某人采取一致的态度，与 in favor of 同义： Are you for or against the new road scheme?</p>
between 与 among 的区别	<p>between 表示在两者之间：There was a fight between the two boys.</p> <p>among 用于三者或三者以上的中间：They hid themselves among the trees.</p>
by	<p>by+将来时间：到.....为止（将来时）：I will have lived here for 5 years by next year.</p> <p>by+过去时间：到.....为止（过去完成时）：I had remembered 5,500 words by the end of last term.</p> <p>2. by 表示在.....旁边：We often go for a walk after dinner by lake.</p> <p>3. by 被：They are supported by a family that appreciates them.</p> <p>4. by+交通工具：We often go to school by bus.</p>
in	<p>in:语言、工具：Can you introduce yourself in English?</p>
beyond	<p>1. 表示“（时间）过了，比.....晚，迟于”。 They arrived beyond nine o'clock. 他们过了九点才到。 He delayed the matter beyond the fixed time. 他把这件事拖到了规定时间之后。</p> <p>2. 表示“（位置）在.....的那边，在.....以外”。 The small village is 20 miles beyond the town. 那个小村庄在离城 20 英里外的地方。 The village is beyond the mountain. 村庄在山的那边。</p>

**【注意】except, except for, besides 的区别**

1. except 表示“除.....外，不再有”，常用于同类事物排除，且不用于句首；except for 也表示

“除.....以外”，指对某种基本情况进行具体的细节方面的修正，它同 **except** 的区别是：**except for** 后接的词同句子中的整体词（主语）不是同类的，指从整体中除去一个细节、一个方面；而 **except** 后接的词同整体词（主语）一般是同类，指在同类的整体中除去一个部分。例如：

Every one of us, **except** Jim, went to watch the basketball match.

除吉姆外，我们都去观看了篮球比赛。

**Except for** one old lady, the bus was empty. 公共汽车上只坐了一位老太太。

Your writing is good **except for** a few grammar mistakes. 除了几处语法错误外，你的作文写得很好。

## 2. **except** 后接从句的用法

**except** 后可接 **that, what, when** 等引导的从句。如：

He has not changed at all **except that** he is no longer so talkative.

他一点也没变，只是不像以前那样爱说话了。

He's good-looking **except when** he smiles. 他长得不错，可一笑就不行了。

3. **besides** 表示一种累加关系，意指“除了.....之外，还有.....”；而 **except** 则表示一种排除关系，意指“除了.....之外，不再有.....”。如：

**Besides** his wife, his daughter also went to see him.

除他妻子外，他女儿也去看过他（即妻子女儿都去看过他）。

Nobody went to see him **except** his wife.

除他妻子外，没有一个人去看过他（即只有他妻子去看过他）。

## 三、常见介词搭配

as a whole 就整体而论

in advance 提前=ahead of time

on the average 平均

by accident 偶然地=by chance

by mistake 错误地

in accordance with 依据，按照

according to 根据

take...into account/consideration 把.....考虑进去

account for 解释，说明

accuse...of=charge...with 指控，控告

be accustomed to 习惯于

be acquainted with 熟悉

act on 按照.....行动

adhere to 坚持，遵循

take advantage of 利用

approve of 赞成，支持

arise from 由.....引起

on the basis of 根据.; 在.....基础上

on behalf of 代表

regardless of 不管；不顾

in addition to 除.....之外

in addition 另外

by contrast 相反地

in conclusion 总之

in memory of 纪念=in honor of

in response to 响应

in touch with 同.....有联系；和.....有接触

in possession of 拥有；占有

sooner or later 迟早

in terms of 依据；按照

next to 几乎；紧挨着，差不多

far from 远离；远非

out of 由于

due to 由于

in time 及时

in case 以防；万一

in need 需要

in vain 徒然

as a result 结果

## 第六节、 形容词和副词

★要点提示:

- 形容词用法
- 多个形容词做定语的排序
- 副词用法
- 形容词与副词的比较级与最高级
- 倍数表达法

【知识点拨】

### 一、 形容词

#### (一) 形容词概述

形容词是主要用来描写或修饰名词或代词的词汇，表示人或事物的性质、状态、特征或属性，常用作定语，也可作表语、补语或状语。

#### (二) 形容词用法

##### 1. 用于名词前作定语

Li Mei is a beautiful city girl.                      This is an interesting movie.

##### 2. 在系动词后作表语

My father's car is very expensive.              The bridge is long and wide.

常见的后面跟形容词作表语的动词:

(1) become, come, fall, get, go, grow, make, turn (表示“变成某种状态”)

He turned red when he heard the news.

(2) continue, hold, keep, lie, remain, stay (表示“保持某种状态”)

It's going to stay cold for some time.

(3) appear, feel, look, smell, sound, taste, know (表示“感觉”)

The beer tastes very delicious.

##### 3. 用作宾语补足语

Don't keep the door open.

His success made him happy.

##### 4. “the+形容词”，表示一类人或事物，相当于名词，用作主语及宾语

The old often think of old things.

The new always take the place of the old.

##### 5. 有时也可用作状语或补语

He walked in the wind, cold and hungry.

##### 6. 少数形容词只能作表语，不能作定语。

这些形容词包括: ill, asleep, awake, alone, alive, alike, well, worth, glad, unable, afraid 等。

He is the greatest physicist alive.

### (三) 形容词后置的情况

修饰 some, any, every, no 和 body, thing, one 等构成的复合不定代词时	nobody absent, everything possible
以-able, -ible 结尾的形容词可置于有最高级或 only 修饰的名词之后	the best book available the only solution possible
和空间、时间、单位连用时	a bridge 50 meters long
成对的形容词可以后置	a huge room simple and beautiful
形容词短语一般后置	a man difficult to get on with

限定词→一般描绘性形容词→表示大小，长短，高低的形容词→表示形状的形容词→表示年龄，新旧的形容词→表示色彩的形容词→表示国籍，地区，出处的形容词→表示物质，材料的形容词→表示用途，类别的形容词→名词中心词。

口诀：县官叔叔美小圆，旧黄法国木书房。（“县”：限定词，即冠词前修饰词如：all, both, such 等；“官”冠词；“叔叔”为“数数”的谐音：序数词和基数词）

the first beautiful little white Chinese stone bridge 第一座美丽的中国的小白石桥

a new red sports shirt 一件新的红色运动衫

a light black plastic umbrella 一把轻的黑塑料伞

a small old brown wooden house 一座小的旧的棕色的木房子

### (五) -ed 形容词和-ing 形容词的用法

1. -ed 形容词指那些-ed 分词转化来的形容词。这类形容词主要用来说明人的感受，含有“人（主观上）感到……”之意。如：I grew excited and a little frightened.

2. -ing 形容词指那些-ing 分词转化来的形容词。这类形容词主要用来说明给人的感受，含有“某事物令人感到……”之意。如：The story has a satisfying ending.

V-ing 形容词	V-ed 形容词
encouraging 令人鼓舞的	encouraged 受鼓舞的
interesting 有趣的	interested 感兴趣的
astonishing 令人惊呆的	astonished 惊呆的
surprising 令人惊奇的	surprised 感到惊奇的
moving 令人感动的	moved 感动的
frightening 令人害怕的	frightened 感到害怕的
satisfying 令人满意的	satisfied 感到满意的
amazing 令人惊讶的	amazed 感到惊讶的
embarrassing 令人尴尬的	embarrassed 感到尴尬的

## 二、副词

### (一) 副词概述

副词是指在句子中表示行为或状态特征的词，用以修饰动词、形容词、副词或全句，表示时间、地点、程度、方式等概念。

## (二) 副词用法

### 1. 作状语

(1) 时间副词：一般放在句首或句尾，注意：early, late, before, later, yet 等一般放在句尾，already, just 一般放在动词的前面。

We will visit the Great Wall tomorrow.

They have already been to the UK twice.

(2) 频度副词：一般放在 be 动词之后或者助动词与主要动词之间，但 sometimes, often 等还可以放在句首或句尾，usually 可放在句首，once 可放在句尾，twice, three times 等一般放在句尾。

Sometimes I get up early.

The workers usually have lunch at the factory.

Take this medicine twice a day.

(3) 方式副词：一般放在行为动词之后，suddenly 可以放在句首、句尾或动词之前。

Old people can hardly walk as quickly as young people.

Suddenly he saw a light in the dark cave.

(4) 地点副词：一般放在句尾，但 here, there 还可放在句首。

There you can see thousands of bikes running in all directions.

The frightened wolf ran away.

He walked out quietly and turned back soon.

(5) 程度副词：修饰动词时，放在动词之前；修饰形容词或副词时，放在形容词或副词之前。

#### 【注意】

enough 作副词，总是位于被修饰的形容词或副词的后面。

The boy is old enough to go to school.

She got to the station early enough to catch the first bus.

enough 作形容词时，可位于名词前也可位于名词后。

We don't have enough money(或 money enough) to buy this house.

(6) 疑问副词：用于对句子的状语进行提问，位置总是在句首。

When and where were you born?

Why did little Edison sit on some eggs?

(7) 连接副词：用来引导主语从句、宾语从句和表语从句，在从句中作状语。

How I am going to kill the duck is still a question.

That is why everyone is afraid of the tiger.

He wondered how he could do it the next day.

(8) 关系副词：用来引导定语从句，在从句中作状语。

This is the place where Mr. Zhang once lived.

(9) 其他常用副词

too	“也”，置于肯定句句尾	He went to the Palace Museum and I went there, too
-----	-------------	--

either	“也不”，置于否定句句尾	It's not an easy car to drive, and it's not cheap either.
also	“也”，置于肯定句中	He can also swim.
so	“如此，这样”，放在形容词、副词	Why did you come so early this morning?
not	放在 be 动词、助动词之后、动词不定	She is not so weak as she looks.
certainly	放在句首或动词之前	Certainly, he had nothing against her.
nor	“也不”，置于句首且倒装	—Tom doesn't have a computer. —Nor do I.
on/off	“开 / 关”，放在动词之后	We turned the engine off to save our fuel.
maybe/perh	放在句首	Maybe your ticket is in your inside pocket.

## 2. 作表语

地点副词一般可以作表语，放在 be 等连系动词之后，说明人物所处的位置

I'm very sorry he isn't in at the moment.

She is abroad now.

Jim is over there.

## 3. 作定语

时间副词（如 now, then）以及许多地点副词（here, there）都可以作名词的定语，放在名词的后面。

People now often have their festival dinners at restaurants.

Women there were living a terrible life in the 1920s.

## 4. 作宾语补足语

地点副词一般可以作宾语补足语。

Put your dirty socks away, Jim! They are giving out bad smell!

Father kept him in and did his lessons. 父亲把他关在家里做作业。

【注意】“动词+副词”的宾语如果是代词，则该副词应该放在代词之后。

He wrote down the word. （他写下了那个单词。）

→He wrote it down. （他把它写了下来。）

### （三）形似副词辨析

1. deep 深深地（主要表示具体可感的深度，一般不放在实义动词前）

→deeply 深刻地，深入地（常用于表示抽象的概念，用于引申义，动词之后或过去分词之前）

2. hard 努力地→hardly 几乎不

It is raining hard.

I was so tired that I could hardly walk.

3. high 高（用来表示具体高度、上升的幅度）→highly 高度地（比喻义）

This kind of bird flies high.

The little boy was highly praised for what he had done.

4. late 晚，迟→lately 近来（相当于 recently）

He goes to bed late and gets up late.

Lately I've collected a lot of foreign stamps.

5. most 极，非常（修饰动词时，不能置于动词和宾语之间）→mostly 主要地

I like swimming most.

The students are mostly from the countryside.

=Most of the students are from the countryside.

6. loud 大声地 (常与 talk, speak, sing, laugh 等词连用, 它不能置于动词前)

→loudly 大声地 (含有喧闹的意思)

They laughed loud and long.      The bomb exploded loudly.

7. near 在附近, 邻近 (仅置于动词后) →nearly 几乎

Easter draws near.      The job was nearly finished before he came.

### 三、形容词和副词的比较级

#### (一) 规则变化

一般单音节词末	直接加-er; -est	tall-taller-tallest great-greater-greatest
以不发音字母 e 结尾的单音节词或者少数-le 结尾的双音节词	加-r; -st	nice-nicer-nicest large-larger-largest able-abler-ablest
以“辅音+y”结尾的词	变 y 为 i 再加-er; -est	dry-drier-driest heavy-heavier-heaviest
以辅音字母结尾的闭音节单音节词	辅音字母双写, 再加-er; -est	thin-thinner-thinnest big-bigger-biggest
多音节和部分双音节单词	在词前加 more; most	more delicious most delicious

#### (二) 常见的不规则形容词和副词比较级和最高级

原级	比较级	最高级
good, well	better	best
bad, badly, ill	worse	worst
many, much	more	most
little	less	least
far	farther / further	farthest / furthest

#### (三) 形容词和副词比较级的用法

##### 1. 常见用法

级别	比较程度	表达方式和意义	例句 (备注)
----	------	---------	---------

原级	同等程度	肯定: as + 原级 + as (和.....一样)	Art is as interesting as music. Today is as cold as yesterday.
		否定: not + so (as) + 原级+as (不如.....那样)	English is not so difficult as science. She does not study so well as I do.
比较级	不同程度 (用于两者比较)	比较级 + than (比.....)	Jim is older than Lucy. I like pork better than beef. 比较级前面可以加 much, far, even, still, a lot, a little, a bit 等。
	程度加深	比较级 + and + 比较级 (越来越.....) the + 比较级, the + 比较级 (越....., 越.....)	He is growing taller and taller. The weather is getting warmer and warmer. The harder you try, the greater your progress is.
最高级	最高程度 (用于三者或三者以上)	the + 最高级 + of (in) (最.....)	Spring is the best season of the year. Lin Tao jumped (the) farthest of all. 副词最高级前面的 the 往往省略。

## 2. 倍数表达法

A is three (four, etc.) times the size (height, length etc.) of B.

A is three (four, etc.) times as big (high, long, etc.) as B.

A is three (four, etc.) times bigger (higher, longer, etc.) than B.

用 times 表倍数通常用于三倍以上, 两倍可以用 twice 或 double。

The new building is four times the size (the height) of the old one.

This coat costs twice as much as that one.

Your school is three times bigger than ours.

## 3. 注意事项

### (1) 可修饰比较级的词

一般的形容词或副词的比较级前面可以加 much/ a little/ even/ still, 而表示数量的 more 之前还可以加 some/ any/ no/ one/ two/ many/ several/ a lot 等词。

It is much colder today than yesterday.

Would you like some more coffee?

### (2) 没有比较级的词

表示“最高程度”的形容词没有最高级和比较级。如: favourite, extreme, perfect, superior, inferior, senior, junior, absolute, adequate, last, supreme, utmost, etc. 如:

He is superior to the other boys in his class. (√)

He is more superior to the other boys in his class. (×)

### (3) than 句型区别

① no more than 只有, 仅仅; not more than 不超过, 至多; no more ... than “与.....都不.....; 既不.....也不.....”。如:

He is no more than an ordinary English teacher. 他只不过是个普通的英文老师。

He has not more than three shirts. 他最多只有 3 件衬衫 (含有或许还不到 3 件之意)。

He is no more a writer than a painter. 他既不是画家, 也不是作家。

②no less than 多达; not less than 不少于, 至少; no less...than 与.....一样....., 不比.....差。如:

We walked no less than three miles. 我们走了三英里之远。

He has not less than seven daughters. 他至少有七个女儿。

He is no less wise than you. 他跟你一样聪明 (他并不比你笨)。

③rather than 而不是; other than 除了;

He is an explorer rather than a sailor. 与其说他是一个海员, 不如说他是一个探险者。

There is nobody here other than me. 除了我以外没有别人。

④more than= over 多于; less than= under 少于;

Hibernation is more than sleep. 冬眠不仅仅是睡眠。

The young man is less than twenty years old. 这个年轻人不到 20 岁。

## 第七节、 动词

★ 要点提示:

- ◇ 了解动词的分类
- ◇ 掌握各类动词的用法
- ◇ 常考动词时态的用法
- ◇ 动词的被动语态
- ◇ 情态动词以及情态动词+have done 的用法
- ◇ 非谓语动词

【知识点拨】

定义:

表示动作或状态的词汇叫做动词。通常用来表示主语做什么, 是什么, 或怎么样的词。例如:

The boy runs fast.(runs 表示主语的行为。) 那个男孩跑的很快。

The boy is a student. (is 和后面的表语 a student 表示主语的状态。) 那个男孩是一名学生。

### Part I 动词的分类

根据其在句中的功能, 动词可分为四类, 分别是: 实义动词 (Notional Verb)、系动词 (Link Verb)、助动词 (Auxiliary Verb)、情态动词 (Modal verb)。

分类	含义	常见词	例句
实义动词	含有实在的意义, 表示动作或状态, 在句子中能独立作谓语。	close, work, study, fly, happen, stop	Birds can fly.
系动词	本身有一定词义, 但不能独立作谓语, 必须与表语一起构成谓语。	am, is, are, become, grow, get, look, sound, smell, taste, feel.	He is a teacher.
助动词	本身没有词义, 不能独立作谓语, 只能和主要动词一起构成谓语动词, 表示疑问, 否定, 时态或其他语法形式	be, have, has, do, does, shall, did, will, should, would	He will go to Shanghai.
情态动词	本身有一定意义, 但不能独立作谓语, 只能和主要动词一起构成谓语动词, 表示说话人的语气和情态。	can, could, may, might, must, need, ought to, dare, should, will, would	She may lose her way.

【注意】

1. 有些情况下, 有些动词是兼类词, 例如:

- (1) We are having a meeting. 我们正在开会。
- (2) He has gone to New York. 他已去纽约。
- (3) She is a beautiful girl. 她是一个漂亮的女孩。

(4) English is becoming more and more important. 英语变得越来越重要。

2. 根据是否受主语的人称和数的限制，可分为两类，分别是：限定动词 (Finite Verb)、非限定动词 (Non-finite Verb)。例如：

She sings very well. 她唱得很好。

She wants to learn English well. 她想学好英语。

**【注意】**

英语中共有三种非限定动词 (即非谓语动词)，分别是：动词不定式 (Infinitive)、动名词 (Gerund)、分词 (Participle)。

动词有五种形态，分别是：原形 (Original Form)、第三人称单数形式 (Singular Form in Third Personal)、过去式 (Past Form)、过去分词 (Past Participle)、现在分词 (Present Participle)

规则变化	动词原形	第三人称单数	现在分词	过去分词和过去式
	一般情况	+s	+ing	+ed
	s, x, ch, sh, o 结	+es	+ing	+ed
	辅音字母+y 结尾	y→i,+es	+ing	y→i,+ed
	重读闭音节一元一辅结尾	+s	双写辅音字母+ing	双写辅音字母+ed
	不发音的 e 结尾	+s	去掉 e, +ing	+d
	ie 结尾	+s	ie→y, +ing	+d
不规则变化		have→ has; be →is	无	

**一、实义动词**

实义动词又称行为动词，指具有实际意义的动词，如 swim, eat, take 等普通的动词，可以独立作谓语。英语中按动词可否直接跟宾语可把动词分为及物动词 (vt) 和不及物动词 (vi)。

分类	用法	句型、例词
及物动词	可直接加宾语	及物动词+宾语
		及物动词+双宾语
		及物动词+宾语+宾补
不及物动词	不可直接加宾语	die, occur, happen, come 等
延续性动词	动作可持续	write, work, carry, repair, live, study 等
非延续性动词	动词不可持续	stop, die, arrive 等

**1. 及物动词**

后面必须跟宾语，意义才完整的实义动词，叫做及物动词 (transitive verb)。英语中的及物动词有：interest, worry, guess, please, surprise, love 等。

I believe that the committee will consider our suggestion. 我相信委员会将会考虑我们的建议。

Dr. Bethune set us a good example. 白求恩大夫给我们树立了好榜样。

**2. 不及物动词**

本身意义完整，后面不用跟宾语的实义动词，叫做不及物动词 (intransitive verb)。常见的不及物动词有：

go, agree, work, listen, look, come, die, appear, happen, speak, sit, rise, seem, arrive, live 等。

Birds can fly. 鸟会飞。

It happened in June 1932. 这件事发生于一九三二年六月。

### 3. 既作及物动词又作不及物动词的词

英语里有不少实义动词可以兼作及物动词和不及物动词。这样的动词又有两种不同的情况:

(1) 兼作及物动词和不及物动词时, 意义不变。例如:

When did they leave Chicago? (leave 作及物动词) 他们是什么时候离开芝加哥的?

They left last week. (left 作不及物动词) 他们是上周离开的。

(2) 兼作及物动词和不及物动词时, 有时意义不尽相同。如:

She couldn't stand the cold. 她受不了寒冷。

Don't stand in the rain. 不要站在雨中。

#### 【注意】

(1) 不及物动词有时可以加上副词或介词, 构成动词短语, 相当于及物动词, 常见的有 listen to, agree to, arrive at。例如:

We arrived at the railway station at noon. (at 不能省去) 我们于中午到达火车站。

Everybody listened to the lecture with great interest. (to 不可省去) 每个人都很有兴趣地听讲座。

(2) 大多数及物动词有被动语态, 不及物动词则没有被动, 要用主动表被动。例如:

The clothes washes well. 这种布料很好洗。

The door closes tightly. 门锁得很紧。

## 二、系动词

系动词亦称联系动词 (Link Verb), 作为系动词, 它本身有词义, 但不能单独用作谓语, 后边必须跟表语 (亦称补语), 构成系表结构说明主语的状况、性质、特征等情况。

说明: 有些系动词又是实义动词, 该动词表达实义时有词义, 可单独作谓语, 例如:

He fell ill yesterday. 他昨天病了。

He fell off the ladder. 他从梯子上摔下来。

### 1. 状态系动词

用来表示主语状态, 只有 be 一词, 例如:

He is a teacher. 他是一名教师。

### 2. 持续系动词

用来表示主语继续或保持一种状况或态度, 主要有 keep, rest, remain, stay, lie, stand, 例如:

He always kept silent at meeting. 他开会时总保持沉默。

This matter rests a mystery. 此事仍是一个谜。

### 3. 表象系动词

用来表示“看起来像”这一概念, 主要有 seem, appear, 例如:

He seems (to be) very sad. 他看起来很伤心。

### 4. 感官系动词

感官系动词与五种感觉器官相关的的动词, 主要有 feel (摸上去), look (看起来), smell (闻起

来), sound (听起来), taste (尝起来)。例如:

This kind of cloth feels very soft. 这种布摸起来很软。

This flower smells very sweet. 这朵花闻起来很香。

### 5. 变化系动词

这些系动词表示主语从一种状态变成另一种状态, 变化系动词主要有 become, grow, turn, fall, get, go, come, run。例如:

He became mad after that. 自那之后, 他疯了。

She grew rich within a short time. 她没多长时间就富了。

### 6. 终止系动词

表示主语已终止动作, 主要有 prove, turn out, 表达“证实, 变成, 结果是”之意。例如:

The rumor proved false. 这谣言证实有假。

The search proved difficult. 搜查证实很难。

His plan turned out a success. 他的计划终于成功了。

## 三、助动词

协助主要动词构成谓语动词词组的词叫助动词 (Auxiliary Verb)。被协助的动词称作主要动词 (Main Verb)。助动词用来构成时态和语态。助动词具有语法意义, 但没有词汇意义, 不可单独作谓语。它没有对应的汉译。例如:

分类	功能
be	帮助现在分词构成现在进行时 (be+doing)
	帮助过去分词构成被动语态 (be+done)
	与不定式构成 be to do 结构, 表示将来、命令、征求意见、约定等
do, does, did	帮助动词原形构成疑问句、否定句
	帮助动词原形构成强调句
	用来替代动词
have, has, had	帮助过去分词构成完成体 (have/has/had done)或完成进行体
will, would, should	帮助动词原形构成一般将来时 (will do) 或过去将来时 (would do)

## 四、情态动词

### 1. 情态动词的特征

(1) 有一定的词义, 但不能单独作谓语, 它们要和行为动词或连系动词连用, 构成谓语。

(2) 适用于主语的各种人称和数 (have to 例外, 主语是第三人称单数时, 要用 has to)。

We/He must work hard. 我们 (他) 一定要努力工作。

I have to walk home. 我得步行回家。

He has to walk home. 他得步行回家。

(3) 后面接动词原形, 即不带 to 的不定式 (ought to, have to, used to 本身带有 to).

He may lose his way. 他可能会迷路。

You ought to obey the law. 你应该遵守法律。

(4) 具有助动词的作用, 即可用来构成否定句, 疑问句及用于简略答语。

—I can't swim. Can you swim? 我不会游泳, 你会游泳吗?

—No, I can't, either. 我也不会。

## 2. 情态动词基本用法

情态动词	用法	否定式	疑问式与简答
can	1. 能力 (体力, 智力, 技能) 2. 允许或请求 (口语中常用) 3. 客观可能性 (客观原因形成的能力)	can not / cannot/ can't do	Can...do...? Yes, ...can./ No, ...can't.
could	4. 表猜测 (惊讶, 怀疑, 不相信的态度), 用于否定句或疑问句中 5. 用于固定句型中: can't ...too / enough(再.....也不为过); can't help doing sth. / can't help but do sth. 忍不住做某事; could do nothing but do sth. 仅仅只能做某事	couldn't do	
may	1. 可以 (问句中表示请求, might 比 may 更委婉)	may not do	May...do...? Yes, ...may. No, ...mustn't/can't.
might	2. 表推测, 可能性 (不用于疑问句) 3. may 表祝愿 (用于祈使句中) 4. 用于固定句型中: may/might as well do 倒不如, 不妨做.....	might not do	Might...do...? Yes, ...might./ No, ...might not.
must	必须, 应该 (表主观要求) 肯定, 想必 (肯定句中表推测)	must not/mustn't do	Must...do...? Yes,...must. No,...needn't/don't have to.
have to	只好, 不得不 (客观的必须, 有时态人称变化)	don't have to do	Do...have to do...? Yes,...do./No,...don't.
shall	将要, 会 (用于一三人称征求对方意见; 用于二三人称表示许诺、命令、警告、威胁等)	shall not/shan't do	Shall...do...? Yes,...shall. / No,...shan't.
ought to should	应当, 应该 (表示义务责任) ought to 比 should 语气重 表示劝告、建议、命令	ought not to/ought n't to do should not/shouldn't do	Ought...to do...? Yes,...ought./ No,...oughtn't. Should...do...?

	表示推测 (should/ought to 表示客观推测。 must 表示主观推测)		
will	意愿, 决心	will not/won't do	Will...do...? Yes,...will./ No,...won't.
would	请求, 建议, 用在问句中 would 比较委婉 表示过去反复发生的动作或某种倾向, would 表示过去习惯时 比 used to 正式, 且 没有“现已无此习惯”的含义。	would not/ wouldn't do	
dare	敢 (常用于否定句和疑问句中)	dare not/daren't do	Dare...do...? Yes,...dare. /No,...daren't.
need	需要, 必须 (常用于否定句和疑问句中, 在肯定句中一般 用 must ,have to, ought to,	need not/needn't do	Need...do...? Yes,...must. / No,...needn't.
used to	过去常常 (现在已不再)	used not/usedn't/ usen't to do didn't use to do	Used...to do...? Yes,...used. / No,...use(d)n't. Did...use to do...? Yes,...did. / No,...didn't.

Shall I turn on the light? 要不要把灯打开? (征求意见)

He shall suffer for this. 他将为此受苦。(威胁)

They ought to apologize. 他们应该道歉。

Would you like a drink? 你想喝一杯吗?

Dare she risk staying where she was? 她敢冒险待在原地不动吗?

Sometimes I would come home late. 有时我总是很晚回家。(表示过去经常性或习惯性的动作)

### 3. 情态动词+have done 的用法

#### (1) 表对过去情况的推测

形式	意义	注意
<b>must have done</b>	一定已经做了某事	表示对过去情况的肯定猜测, 否定句中用 can't have done“不可能已经做了某事”
<b>can/could have done</b>	可能做过某事	一般用于否定句和疑问句中, could 的语气弱
<b>may/might</b>	可能做过某事	一般不用于疑问句中, 否定形式为 may/might not have done“过去可能没做某事”; might 表示的可

From what you said, she must have told you all about it.

I think that he can't/couldn't have gone abroad. I saw him just now.

John may/might not have passed the exam; he looks very sad.

(2)表虚拟语气

形式	意义	注意
should / ought to have done	过去本应该做某事却未做	否定结构 为 shouldn't / oughtn't to have done“过去本不该做某事却做了”
need have done	过去本有必要做某事却未做	needn't have done 过去本没必要做某事却做了
could (不能用 can) have done	过去本能够做某事却未做了	否定形式 couldn't have done“过去不可能做某事” <u>可以表虚拟语气 也可以表推测</u>
might (不能用 may) have done	过去本可以做某事却未做	否定形式 might not have done“过去可能没有做某事”，没有虚拟语气的用法，只能表推测

I should/ought to have left London before nine but I didn't

I needn't have gone to the office yesterday.

We could have done it all much better.

I might have taken another path.

## Part II 动词的时态语态

### 一、动词的时态

时态是英语谓语动词的一种形式，表示动作发生的时间和所处的状态。英语中的时态是通过动词形式本身的变化来实现的。

#### (一) 时态的种类

英语有 16 种时态，但较常用的有十种：一般现在时，一般过去时，一般将来时，现在进行时，过去进行时，过去将来时，将来完成时，过去完成时，现在完成时和现在完成进行时。（以 work 为例）

状态时间	现在	过去	将来	过去将来
一般	work(s)	worked	shall/will work	should/would work
进行	am/is/are working	was/were working	shall/will be working	should/would be working
完成	have/has worked	had worked	shall/will have worked	should/would/ could have worked
完成进行时	have/has been working	had been working	shall/will have been working	should/would have been working

#### (二) 常见的时态及用法

##### 1. 一般现在时

表示现阶段经常或习惯发生的动作或存在的状态，或说明主语的特征。

构成：do/does (连系动词 is/am/are)

(1) 表示经常性或习惯性的动作或存在的状态。

He gets up at five o'clock every day. 他每天五点起床。

He often plays football. 他经常踢足球。

(2) 表示主语的状态、性质、特征、能力等，目的是为了描述现阶段的动作或者状态。

I don't want so much. 我不想要太多。

Wang An writes good English but doesn't speak well. 王安英语写得很好但是说得不好。

(3) 表示客观真理、科学事实、格言、寓言及其他不受时空限制的事实。

The earth goes around the sun. 地球绕着太阳转。

Light travels faster than sound. 光传播比声音快。

(4) 一般现在时表示将来

①表示十分确定会发生（如安排好的事情）或按照时间表进行的（将要发生的）事情，用一般现在时表达将来。

The train for Hankou leaves at 8:00 in the morning. 开往汉口的列车上午 8 点开车。

②在时间状语从句（以 when, after, before, while, until, as soon as 等引导）和条件状语从句（以 if, unless 引导）中，用一般现在时代替一般将来时。

Please ring me up as soon as you arrive in Germany. 请你一到德国就给我打电话。

If it rains tomorrow, we will have to stay at home. 如果明天下雨我们就只好待在家中。

(5) 在以 here, there 开头的句子里, go, come 等少数动词的一般现在时表示正在发生的动作。

There goes the bell. 铃响了。

There comes the bus. 汽车来了。

(6) 常见的与一般现在时连用的时间状语有 always, often, usually, sometimes, once a year, twice a month, three times a week, on Sundays, on Monday afternoon, every day, in the morning, every year 等。

## 2. 一般过去时

表示过去某时发生的动作或状态, 这种动作或状态可能是一次性, 也可能经常发生。过去常常做某事也可用 used to do sth.来表示。

构成: did (连系动词 was/were)

(1) 表示过去具体时刻发生的一次性动作。

I got up at 6: 00 this morning. 我是早上六点钟起床的。

He came to our city in the year 2000. 他是 2000 年来到我们市的。

(2) 表示过去一个阶段中经常发生的事情。

Mr. Jackson usually went to evening schools when he was young. 杰克逊年轻时通常会去上夜校。

(3) 讲故事、对过去经历的回忆、双方都明白的过去事件等一般用过去时, 而且经常省略时间状语。

I happened to meet Rose in the street. 我正好在街上遇到露西。

(4) 与一般过去时连用的时间状语有:

(ten minutes) ago, yesterday, last, last week, some years ago, in 1995, in the past, the other day, at that time, just now, in..., from... to..., for (10 years,...), sometimes, always, never 等, 以及 when 引导的时间状语从句。

I did a lot of housework last weekend.

When he went into the room, he saw a stranger talking with his father .

## 3. 一般将来时

表示将来某一时刻或经常发生的动作或状态。

构成: will/shall do; is/am/are going to do; is/am/are (about) to do

(1) 用 will 构成的将来时, 表示动作与人的主观愿望无关。shall 用于第一人称; will 用于所有人称。

I will graduate from this school soon. 我很快就要从这所学校毕业了。

The sun will rise at 6:30 tomorrow. 明天太阳将在 6:30 升起。

(2) 表示意愿时。(不用 be going to)

We will help him if he asks us. 如果他请我们, 我们愿意帮助他。

注: shall 和 will 在口语的一些疑问句中相当于情态动词, 表示征求对方意见或请求。shall 一般与第一人称连用, will 与第二人称连用。

Shall we go to the park next Saturday? 我们下周六去公园好吗?

Will you please open the door for me? 替我把门打开好吗?

(3) “be going to+动词原形”表示打算或准备要做的事情, 或者主观判断即将要发生的事情, 或有某种迹象表明要发生的事。

It's going to rain soon. 天快要下雨了。

(4) “be about to+动词原形”和“be to+动词原形”结构表按照计划即将发生的动作。

He is (about) to go abroad. 他要出国了。

(5) 现在进行时、一般现在时也可以表示将来。

We're leaving on Friday. 我们周五出发。

If she comes, I will tell her all about it. 如果她来, 我会把这件事告诉她。

(6) 与一般将来时连用的时间状语有:

tomorrow, this (afternoon), next (year), one day, soon, someday, sometime, in the future, in+一段时间, 以及 when/ after 等引导的状语从句的主句。

I will call you when my mother comes back. 妈妈回来时, 我会给你打电话。

#### 4. 现在进行时

现在进行时表示现在正在进行的动作, 或是现阶段正发生而此刻不一定在进行的动作。

构成: is/am/are doing

(1) 表示此时此刻正在进行的动作。常与 now, look, listen, at the moment 等连用。

— What are you doing?

— I'm reading English.

(2) 表示现阶段正在进行的动作或持续的状态。常与 these days 等时间状语连用。

My father is writing a novel these days. 我爸爸最近在写小说。

They are studying hard this term. 他们这学期学习一直很努力。

#### 【注意】

该用法的现在进行时常与频度副词连用, 如 always, constantly, for ever 等, 以表示赞扬、不满或讨厌等感情色彩。

He is always borrowing money from me and forgetting all about it a few days later.

他总是向我借钱, 几天之后就忘记了。

(3) 位移动词, 如 go, come, leave, stay, start, begin 等, 常用进行时表将来, 表示即将发生或安排好要做的事情。

We are leaving for London soon. 我们很快就要动身去伦敦了。

She is going there tomorrow. 她明天要去那里。

I'm coming now. 我就来。

#### 【注意】

下列这些动词一般不用现在进行时态:

①表示感觉的动词。如 see, hear, smell, taste, feel 等。

②表示喜欢或厌恶的动词。如 like, love, hate, prefer, adore, mind, object 等。

③表示希望的动词。如 want, wish, desire 等。

④表示状态的动词。如 be 等。

⑤表示归属的动词。如 have, belong to 等。

⑥表示知道、相信、猜想的动词。如 know, believe, suppose, wonder, think 等。

#### 5. 过去进行时

过去进行时表示过去某一时刻或某阶段内正在进行的动作。

构成: was/were doing

(1) 表示过去某时正在进行的动作。

He was preparing his lecture at 11:00 last night. 他昨晚 11:00 在为演讲做准备。

(2) 表示过去某一阶段内习惯性的动作。

He was getting up at five every day that week. 那个星期他每天五点钟起床。

注意：该用法的过去进行时表示过去一个阶段频繁发生或反复进行的动作，常与 always 等频度副词连用，表示赞扬、不满或讨厌等感情色彩。

He was always borrowing money from me when he lived here. 他住在这里时老向我借钱。

(3) 表示一个动作在另一个过去动作发生时进行，或者两个过去进行时动作同时发生。

She saw it happen when she was walking past. 她路过时看到事情发生。

Father was watching TV while mother was cooking supper. 爸爸正在看电视，妈妈正在做饭。

(4) 表示过去将来时。(用法同现在进行时)

某些位移动词，如 go, come, leave, stay, start, begin 等，常用其过去进行时表过去将来时，表示按照计划安排即将发生的动作。

He said he was leaving for Beijing the next day. 他说他次日将要去北京。

(5) 与过去进行时连用的时间状语有：

then, at that time, this time yesterday, at (night), yesterday (morning), 以及由 when/ while 引出的时间状语从句。

He was cooking supper this time yesterday. 昨天这个时候他正在做晚饭。

The little girl was playing with her toy when I saw her. 我看到这个小女孩时，她正在玩玩具。

## 6. 现在完成时

现在完成时表示一个发生在过去的、对现在仍有影响的动作，或表示开始在过去，并且一直延续到现在，甚至还可能延续下去的动作。

构成：has/have done

(1) 表示过去发生的动作对现在产生的影响或结果，说话时已完成的动作。常与时间状语 already, yet, just, once, twice, ever, never, three times, before 连用。

He has just gone to England. 他刚去英国。

I have never seen such fine pictures before. 我以前从来没有看过这么好的画。

(2) 表示开始在过去，并且一直延续到现在，甚至还可能延续下去的动作，常和“for...”, “since...”表述的一段时间状语连用。

I have been away from my hometown for three years.

= I have been away from my hometown since three years ago. 我离开家乡有 3 年了。

(3) 表示“曾经到过某地（人已回来）”用“have/has been to”

表示“到某地去了（还未回来）”用“have/has gone to”

— Where is Mr. Li? —李先生在哪里？

— He has gone to the UK. —他去了英国。

I have been to Beijing three times. 我去过北京三次。

(4) 瞬间动词

在完成时中，瞬间性动词（一次性动作）不能与表示一段时间的状态连用（不能说 He has joined the army for three years.或 How long have you borrowed the book?）。若想表达这样的说法，可采用两种方

式:

一是使用下面这个句型:

It is / has been + (多久) + since + 主语 (人) + 谓语 (过去时) + ...。如:

It is/has been three years since he joined the army.

二是将瞬间动词改为延续性动词或状态动词, 如:

How long have you kept the book? 这本书我能借多久? (句子中 keep 取代了 borrow)

常用瞬间动词相应持续性动词关系:

非延续性动词	延续性动词	非延续性动词	延续性动词
buy	have	begin/start	be on
borrow	keep	end/finish	be over
come	be here	die	be dead
leave	be away (from)	catch a cold	have a cold
open/close	be open/be closed	become interested in	be interested in
get married	be married	put on	wear
get up	be up	wake up	be awake
fall asleep	be asleep	arrive/reach	be
join	be in = be a member of	leave	be away from
go	be there	begin to study	study

## 7.过去完成时

表示过去某一时间或某一动作发生之前已经完成的动作。简言之, 过去完成时所表示的实际是过去的过去”。过去完成时在句中使用时一般必须有一个或暗含一个发生在过去的动作与其相比较, 使用过去完成时的动词动作发生在该过去的动作之前。

构成: had done

(1) 表示在过去某一时间以前已经完成的动作。

He had shut the door before the dog came up. 在狗来之前他就把门关上了。

She had left by the time I arrived. 我到达以前, 她已经离开了。

(2) 表示动作或状态从过去某个时刻开始一直延续到另一个过去时刻才完成, 甚至还要继续下去。

At the age of ten, he had learned 500 English words. 十岁时, 他就已经学会了 500 个英语单词。

He had been ill for a week when we learned about it. 我们知道这件事时, 他就已经病了一周了。

(3) 与过去完成时连用的时间状语有:

by (yesterday), by then, by the end of, already, just, once, ever, never, for, since 或者由 when, before, after 等引出状语从句。

He had lived in Shanghai for ten years before he came here. 他来这之前就已经在上海生活了 10 年。

The woman had left before he realized she was a cheat. 那个女人在被他认出是骗子之前离开了。

After I had put on my shoes and hat, I walked into the darkness.

我穿上鞋子、戴上帽子之后走进了黑暗之中。

## 8. 过去将来时

表示从过去某一时间看将来发生或预计将要发生的动作或存在的状态。

构成: would/should do; was/were going to do; was/were (about) to do

(1) 相对于过去某一时刻而言即将发生的动作或存在的状态

He told me he would go to Beijing. 他告诉我他即将去北京。

(2) 表示曾经打算或准备要做的动作, 用 were/was going+动词原形。

They were going to start a new job when I saw them then.

当我看到他们时, 他们准备开始一份新工作。

(3) go, come, leave, arrive, start 等位移动词, 其过去进行时表示过去将来时。

(4) 与过去将来时连用的时间状语有: later, soon, the next (day)等。

Tom told me (that) he would go swimming the next day. 汤姆告诉我他第二天要去游泳。

## 9. 将来完成时

将来完成时是用来表示在将来某一时间以前已经完成或一直持续的动作。

构成: shall(第一人称)/will(第二、三人称)+have+过去分词(done)

即在以下情况下可以用将来完成时:

(1) 状态已完成: 表示某事持续到将来某一时刻为止一直有的状态。并在将来完成。

They will have been married for 20 years by then. 到那时他们俩结婚就满 20 年了。

(2) 动作已完成: 表示将来某一时刻或另一个将来的动作之前, 已经完成的动作或已经对动作产生一定的影响。

You will have reached Shanghai by this time tomorrow. 明天的这个时候你就到上海了。

## 10. 现在完成进行时

现在完成进行时是英语中动词的一种基本时态, 表示动作从某一时间开始, 一直持续到现在, 或者刚刚终止, 或者可能仍然要继续下去。

其构成为: 主语+助动词(have/has)+been+动词的现在分词+其他成分。

(1)表示从过去某时开始一直持续到现在的动作, 并且还将持续下去。

The Chinese have been making paper for two thousand years.

中国有 2000 年的造纸历史。(动作还将继续下去)

I have been learning English since three years ago. 三年以来我一直在学英语。(动作还将继续下去)

(2)表示在说话时刻之前到现在正在进行的动作。

We have been waiting for you for half an hour.

我们已经等你半个钟头了(人还没到, 如同在电话里说的, 还会继续等)

(3)有些现在完成进行时的句子等同于现在完成时的句子。

They have been living in this city for ten years.

They have lived in this city for ten years.

他们在这个城市已经住了 10 年了。(动作还将继续下去)

I have been working here for five years.

I have worked here for five years.

我在这里已经工作五年了。(动作还将继续下去)

(4)大多数现在完成进行时的句子不等同于现在完成时的句子。

I have been writing a book. 我一直在写一本书。(动作还将继续下去)

I have written a book. 我已经写了一本书。(动作已经完成)

They have been building a bridge. 他们一直在造一座桥。(动作还将继续下去)

They have built a bridge. 他们造了一座桥。(动作已经完成)

(5)表示状态的动词不能用于现在完成进行时。

I have known him for years. 我认识他已经好几年了。(错误)

I have been knowing... (正确)

这类不能用于现在完成进行时的动词还有: love 爱, like 喜欢, hate 讨厌, think 想, 等等。

(6)一些现在完成时的句子也与现在完成进行时的句子含义相同。

延续性动词在现在完成时与现在完成进行时时态中使用, 句意相同。例如:

She has slept for 6 hours and still cannot wake up.

She has been sleeping for 6 hours and still cannot wake up. 她已经睡了6个小时, 到现在还没有醒来。

(7)表示现在以前一直在进行的动作, 强调动作的未完成性。

It has been raining for 3 days. 已经下了3天的雨了。(现在还没停止)

### (三) 易混时态对比

#### 1. 一般过去时 VS 现在完成时

现在完成时表示过去的动作与现在的联系, 主要说明的是现在的情况和状态;

一般过去时强调动作发生在过去, 与现状不发生联系。如:

We haven't seen him since last year. (现在还没见到)

We didn't see him last year. (现在不一定没见到)

She has lived in Paris for twenty years. (现在还在巴黎)

She lived in Paris for twenty years. (现在不在巴黎)

#### 2. 现在完成时 VS 现在完成进行时

现在完成时与 for 和 since 连用时也可强调持续性, 除此之外, 现在完成时主要表示完成, 强调动作的结果或对现在的影响; 现在完成进行时强调过去发生的动作一直在进行, 重点强调动作的持续性, 这个动作到此刻仍未结束或刚刚结束。如:

Helen has read a book about Stonehenge. (动作已完成, 强调与现在的联系)

Helen has been reading a book about Stonehenge. (动作未结束, 强调持续性)

We've been hunting for you everywhere. (动作已结束, 强调持续性)

## 二、动词的语态

动词语态是指特殊的动词形式, 用以表示动作的主语和宾语之间的关系。英语的语态有两种: 主动语态和被动语态。主动语态中主语是动作的执行者, 被动语态中主语是动作的承受者。

They always help you. 他们总是帮助你。(主动)

You are always helped by them 你总是被他们帮助。(被动)

### (一) 主动语态改被动语态的转换规则

1. 把原句中的宾语改成主语;
2. 动词改为被动形式 be done (同时注意时态);
3. 原来的主语如果需要的话放在介词 by 后面, 以指明做事的人或物, 如果没有必要则省去。

The man killed a tiger. → A tiger was killed by the man.

## (二) 被动语态的形式

被动语态常常在有必要指出动作执行者的情况下使用。由助动词 be + done (过去分词) 构成, 时态通过 be 动词的形式变化表现出来。被动语态中的 be 为助动词, 无意义。

时态	动词的被动形式	例句
一般现在时	am/is/are done	You are required to do this.
一般过去时	was/were done	The story was told by her.
一般将来时	will be done	The problem will be discussed tomorrow.
现在进行时	am/is/are being done	The road is being widened.
过去进行时	was/were being done	The new tool was being made.
现在完成时	have/ has been done	The novel has been read.
过去完成时	had been done	He said that the work had been finished.
过去将来时	would be done	He said that the trees would be planted soon.

## (三) 被动语态的用法

1. 当动作的执行者不明确或无需指出时。

Printing was introduced into Europe from China.

A lecture on English literature will be given tonight.

2. 为了强调动作的承受者。

Four people were killed and thirty injured in the bomb attack.

Susan was singled out (选出/挑出) for praise yesterday.

## (四) 注意事项

### 1. 动词词组的被动语态

除及物动词外, 一些相当于及物动词的动词短语, 如 call on, carry out, look after, deal with, take care of 等也可使用被动形式, 动词短语应被视为不可分割的一个整体, 一般不拆开使用。

This matter will be dealt with as soon as possible.

My younger brother is well looked after (by my grandma).

### 2. 特殊动词的被动语态

含有使役动词 (make, let, have) 或感官动词 (hear, see, listen to, look at, find, watch 等) 的句子, 在主动语态中这些词后常跟不带 to 的动词不定式, 但是在改成被动语态时, 则一定要把省去的 to 加上。

另外在主动语态中, help 这个词后面的动词不定式可以带 to, 也可不带 to, 但在被动语态中必须把 to 加上。

Mother often makes me do some housework.

→I am often made to do some housework by mother.

We saw him run into the classroom.

→He was seen to run into the classroom by us.

She needs to be helped to solve the problem.

### 3. 无主句被动语态

汉语有一类句子不出现主语，在英语中一般可用被动结构表示。

It is believed that...人们相信 It is generally considered that...一般认为

It is said that...据说 It is well known that...众所周知

It must be pointed out that...必须指出 It is supposed that...人们猜测

It is reported that...据报道 It must be admitted that...必须承认

It is said that he is the richest man in the city. 据说他是城里最富有的人。

It was reported that the boy had been found. 据报道，那个男孩被找到了。

#### 4. 主动形式表达被动意义

(1) want/need/require/worth+doing

The window wants/needs/requires repairing.

(2) cut, sell, read, write, fill, cook, lock, wash (表示主语的内在品质或性能时) 等。

This knife cuts well. / These books sell well.

(3) 感官动词: look, smell, taste, sound, feel 及系动词 remain, prove, turn out 等。

The apples taste good. / Cotton feels soft.

#### 5. 无被动语态的情况

(1) 不及物动词或动词短语无被动语态。如: happen, rise, occur, die, disappear, sit, stand, take place, break out, result from, belong to, consist of, come true, fall asleep 等。

(2) 表示状态的动词或动词短语无被动语态。如: fit, suit, have, remain, seem, appear。

(3) 大多数系动词, 如 feel, sound, look, smell, taste 等无被动语态, 其主动形式表达被动意义。

### Part III 非谓语动词

在英语中, 一个简单句中只能有一个谓语动词, 当这个句子中需要用其他动词来修饰或补充说明时只能用非谓语动词的形式。非谓语动词即在句子中不做谓语的动词, 包括动词不定式、动名词和分词, 其中分词包括现在分词与过去分词。

非谓语形式	构成			特征和作用
	时态和语态		否定式	
不定式	to do to be doing to have done	to be done to have been done	在 非谓 语前加 not	for sb to do sth. 具有名词、副词和形容词的作用; 在句中做主、宾、定、表、补和
现在分词	doing having done	being done having been done		具有副词和形容词的作用; 在句中做定、表、宾补和状语
过去分词	done			

动名词	doing having done	being done having been done		sb's doing	具有名词的作用 在句中做主、宾、定和表 语
-----	----------------------	--------------------------------	--	---------------	-----------------------------

I hope **to see you** again. 我希望再见到你

Everyone is practising **speaking English**. 每个人都在练习说英语。

He went home, **finding the door locked**. 他回到家，发现门是锁着的。

The concert **given by their friends** was a success. 他们朋友举行的音乐会大为成功。

## 一、不定式

### (一) 不定式的形式

动词不定式是一种非谓语动词，在句中不能单独作谓语，由不定式符号“to+动词原形”构成。它可带宾语和状语等，构成不定式短语。不定式符号 to 不是介词，无词义。

#### 1. 时态与语态

不定式没有人称和数的变化。但有了一般式、完成式、进行式，也有主动和被动语态的区别。

	主动	被动
一般式	to do	to be done
进行式	to be doing	
完成式	to have done	to have been done

不定式的一般式通常表示一个将来或经常性的动作，它与主句谓语动作同时发生，或在它之后发生。如：

She appears to be happy.

不定式的进行式表示正在进行的动作。如：It happened to be raining when I got there.

不定式的完成式表示该动作发生在主句谓语动作之前。如：I'm sorry to have lost your key.

不定式的完成进行式表示该动作在主句谓语动作发生之前，并且一直进行着。如：

He was said to have been living in Beijing for ten years.

#### 2. 不定式的否定式

不定式的否定形式通常是在不定式前面加 not, never 等。

They told me not to open the window.

She wished never to see him again.

#### 3. 不定式的逻辑主语

如果表明不定式或不定式短语的动作发出者（即逻辑主语），就要在不定式前用 for+名词（或代词的宾格）。

Is the road wide enough for two cars to pass?

The conference is too important for you to miss.

### (二) 不定式（短语）的用法

不定式或不定式短语一般表示将来的动作或表目的与结果，在句中作主语、表语、宾语、宾语补足语、定语及状语。

### 1. 作主语

不定式或不定式短语作主语时，谓语动词用第三人称单数。

To serve the people well is our duty. 为人民服务好是我们的责任。

To talk with him is a great pleasure. 和他谈话是一件非常愉快的事。

#### 【注意】

为了避免头重脚轻，在许多情况下，通常都将作主语的不定式置于句子后部，而用引导词 it 作形式上的主语。

It +be+形容词 (difficult/easy/important/impossible/necessary) to do sth.

It is difficult for us to finish writing an composition in an hour.

对我们来说在一个小时之内写完一篇作文很困难。

It is important to learn a foreign language. 学习一门外语很重要。

It's a pity to leave so early. 这么早走太遗憾。

### 2. 作表语

不定式作表语，用于系动词如 be, seem, appear, prove, turn 等之后。

Your main task now is to improve the quality of the products.

He appears to have caught a cold.

#### 【注意】

有时“be+动词不定式”表示“打算、计划做……”，可表示将来发生的事态。

We are to meet at the station at three. 我们约定 3 点钟在车站见面。

### 3. 作宾语

不定式可用来做宾语。能接不定式做宾语的动词有：

口诀	解释	例句
决心学会想希望	decide/determine, learn, want, expect/hope/wish	She pretended not to see me when I passed by. 当我经过时，她假装没看见我。 We agreed to meet here but so far she hasn't turned up yet. 我们约好了在此地见面，但是她到现在还没有露面
拒绝设法愿假装	refuse, manage, care, pretend	
主动答应选计划	offer, promise, choose, plan	
同意请求帮一帮	agree, ask/beg, help	

### 4. 作宾语补足语

①不定式作宾语的补足语时，不定式的 to 不能省略。这样的动词有：

advise, allow, ask, beg, cause, encourage, expect, force, forbid, get, order, permit, persuade, require, teach, tell, want, wish, warn, call on, wait for, recommend, oblige, long for 等。

The teacher advised us to learn through experiment. 老师劝我们通过实验来学习。

They didn't allow us to enter the hall. 他们不允许我们进入大厅。

②不定式作宾语的补足语时，不定式的 to 须省略。这样的动词有：

let, make, see, hear, feel, watch, notice, have, listen to, look at 等, 但它们变为被动语态时, 不定式的 to 不能省略。

The boss made the workers work over ten hours a day in the past.

=The workers were made to work over ten hours a day by the boss.

过去老板使工人们每天工作十多个小时。

I saw Li Lei fall down from his bike.

=Li Lei was seen to fall down from his bike. 我看见李雷从单车上摔了下来。

### 【注意】

① help 后面作宾语补足语的不定式带 to 或不带 to 都可以。但变为被动语态时, 不定式的 to 不能省略。

He can help his mother (to ) do the housework.

=His mother can be helped to do the house work (by him).

② 在 cannot but, do nothing but (except), had better, rather than, would rather 等结构后要接不带 to 的动词不定式。

I have done nothing except do what I should.

③ make sb. do sth. 让某人做某事

sb./sth. done 让某事被做

He made his workers work 12 hours a day.

He tried to make himself understood.

④ have sb. do sth. 让某人做某事

sth. done 让某事被做

He had his child do homework by himself.

He had his car repaired.

## 5. 作定语

不定式用来修饰名词, 位于被修饰名词的后面。

① 动词不定式与其修饰的词之间往往有动宾关系, 如果该不定式是及物动词, 其后有必要的介词。

It is a pleasant thing to remember.

He's a pleasant fellow to work with.

There's nothing to worry about.

② 在“the only + 名词”, “the last + 名词”, “the best + 名词”, “序数词 + (名词)”等结构中的名词之后, 习惯上用不定式做定语。

The monitor will be the first (man) to come.

He was the last man to blame.

Long skirts were the only thing to wear at that time.

③ 有些名词后常跟不定式作定语, 如:

time, reason, chance, right, ability, willingness, need, anxiety, wish, plan, way, power, order, effort, opportunity, determination, attempt, decision, promise, refusal, failure, tendency 等。

Women should have the right to receive education.

There is no time to hesitate.

You don't have any reason to leave me.

## 6. 作状语

不定式作状语时，其动作发生在谓语动词之后，一般置于句尾。作目的状语或者表示将来的动作，但 only+ to do 特殊，是作结果状语。

He went to shanghai to visit his parents. (目的状语)

To save the earth, we must prevent the earth from being polluted. (目的状语)

I hurried to the station, only to find the train had left. (结果状语)

He searched the room only to find nothing. (结果状语)

She burst into laughter to see his funny action. (原因状语)

有些固定词组带 to 不定式，表明说话人的立场或态度，在句中作独立成分。如：

to be honest, to begin with, to get (back) to the point, to put it another way, to tell the truth 等。

To tell you the truth, I have never been to Beijing.

To be honest, I have never heard of Winston Churchill.

### 【注意】

不定式表目的与结果的常用句型有：

in order to do... 为了..... such/so... as to... 如此.....以至于

enough to do... 足够..... too.... to... 太.....而不能

## 二、动名词

### (一) 动名词的形式

动名词与动词不定式一样，也是一种非谓语形式，在句中不能单独作谓语，它可以带宾语、状语等构成动名词短语。

#### 1. 时态与语态

动名词由动词原形+ing 构成，没有人称和数的变化，但有语态的变化，并且有一般式和完成式。

以 do 为例：

	主动	被动
一般式	doing	being done
完成式	having done	having been done

动名词的一般式表示一般性的动作概念，不明确动作发生的时间。

动名词的完成式表示发生在主句谓语动作之前的动作。

Everyone is practising speaking English. (与谓语动作同时发生)

Would you mind opening the window? (发生在谓语动作之后)

He apologized for having broken his promise. 他因没遵守诺言表示道歉。(发生在谓语动作之前)

#### 2. 动名词的否定式

动名词的否定式一般在动名词前加 not。

Not being punctual makes him unreliable. 不按时使人觉得他不可靠。

Excuse me for not having answered your letter before. 请原谅我之前没有给您回信。

He doesn't like not being taken seriously. 他不喜欢别人不把他当回事。

I'm surprised at your not having noticed. 你竟未注意到，我对此感到吃惊。

### 3. 动名词的逻辑主语

动名词前可以有自己的逻辑主语，作为该动名词所表示的动作用的发出者。

用作动名词逻辑主语的词类有：物主代词、名词所有格、人称代词宾格。

Anything that improves our understanding of the world must be good.

任何促进我们对世界了解的东西一定是美好的。(物主代词，作宾语)

He objected to his son's going to the south.

他反对他的儿子去南方。(名词属格，作动词短语的宾语)

Do you mind me making a suggestion? 我提个建议好吗？(人称代词宾格，作宾语)

#### (二) 动名词的用法

动名词既有动词的性质，又有名词的性质。动名词的动词性质表现在：动名词有时态和语态的变化；动名词的名词性质表现在：动名词在句子中可以作主语、表语、宾语、定语、状语等。

#### 1. 作主语

It is/was+no use/good+doing sth.

It is no good smoking.

#### 2. 作表语

My favorite sport is swimming. 我最喜欢的运动是游泳。

His job is looking after sheep. 他的任务是看羊。

Seeing is believing. 眼见为实。

#### 【注意】

be+动名词(表语)与 be+现在分词(构成进行时态)在形式上相同，但在前一种结构中，be 是系动词，有词义，而在后一种结构中，be 是助动词，只是用来构成一种谓语时态，无词义。二者的区别主要是根据上下文的逻辑意思来定。

My favorite sport is skating. (动名词)

My brother is skating. (分词)

#### 3. 作宾语

口诀	解释	例句
考虑建议盼望	consider, suggest/advise, look forward to,	The squirrels were lucky that they just missed being caught. 松鼠们很幸运没有被抓住。
原谅	excuse/pardon	I would appreciate your calling back this afternoon. 我对你今天下午回电话表示感谢。
承认推迟没	admit, delay/put off, fancy(想象, 设	I can hardly imagine Peter sailing across the Atlantic
避免错过继	avoid, miss, keep/keep on, practice	Ocean in five days. 我几乎不能想象彼得在五天之内横
否认完成就	deny, finish, enjoy/appreciate	渡大西洋。
禁止想象才	forbid, imagine, risk	

不禁介意准 逃亡	can't help, mind, allow/permit, escape	He got well-prepared for the job interview, for he couldn't risk losing the good opportunity. 他为这次工作面试做了充分准备，因为他不能冒失去这次好机会的风险。
-------------	--	---

注意：allow, permit, forbid, advise, consider 后需加动名词作宾语，但如果后面有名词或代词作宾语，则用不定式作宾补

搭配	例句
allow doing sth. permit (动名词作宾语)	We don't allow smoking in the hall. 我们不准在大厅内吸烟。 Smoking is forbidden here but you are allowed to smoke over there. 这里禁止吸烟，但你可以去那里吸。
forbid + sb. to do sth. advise (不定式作宾补)	
consider	

**【注意】**

(1) to 既可以作介词，又可以作不定式符号，因此要牢记含介词 to 的常用短语

含介词 to 的短语	例句
be used to(习惯于) be accustomed to(习惯于) be opposed to(反对) object to(反对) lead to(导致) be devoted to(献身于) stick to(坚持, 坚守) pay attention to(注意)	doing He is used to getting up early. 他习惯了很早起床。 Heart failure can sometimes lead to being killed. 心力衰竭有时可能会导致死亡。

(2) 可将介词 in 省略的短语、句型

可将介词 in 省略的短语、句型	例句
spend... (in) doing have difficulty (in) doing	I had no difficulty(in) making myself understood. 我毫不费力地表达了自己的意思。

**【小试牛刀】** 用所给词的适当形式填空

- The discovery of new evidence led to the thief \_\_\_\_\_ (catch).
- The man insisted on \_\_\_\_\_ (find) a taxi for me even though I told him I lived nearby.
- According to a recent U.S. survey, children spend up to 25 hours a week \_\_\_\_\_ (watch) TV.

(3) 下列动词或词组既可以跟动名词作宾语，也可以跟不定式作宾语，但意义上有区别

remember to do sth. 记着要做某事 Remember to lock the door. 记得锁门。

remember doing sth. 记得已经做过某事 I remember locking the door. 我记得把门锁上了。

forget to do sth. 忘记要做某事

forget doing sth. 忘记做过某事

regret to say/tell/inform...遗憾地说 / 告诉 / 通知.....

regret doing sth.后悔做过某事

mean to do sth.打算做某事

mean doing sth.意味着做某事

Raising salary means increasing purchasing power.涨工资意味着提高购买力。

He didn't mean to hurt you. 他并没打算伤害你。

#### 4. 作定语

动名词作定语往往表示被修饰词的某种用途。

None is allowed to smoke in the waiting room. (= room for waiting)

These dialogues may be used as listening materials. (= materials for listening)

### 三、分词

分词也是一种非谓语动词，在句中不能单独作谓语，没有人称和数的变化，它可以带宾语、状语和表语构成分词短语。分词有现在分词和过去分词两种。

#### (一) 现在分词

##### 1. 现在分词的形式

##### (1) 现在分词的时态与语态

现在分词由原形动词+ing 构成，表示主动或进行的动作。有一般式和完成式，并有主动和被动语态。以 do 为例：

	主动	被动
一般式	doing	being done
完成式	having done	having been done

现在分词的一般式所表示的动作与主语动作同时发生。

现在分词的完成式表示的动作发生在主句谓语动作之前。

When we arrived, we found him sleeping. 我们到达时发现他在睡觉。

He went home, finding the door locked. 他回到家，发现门是锁着的。

Having finished her studies, she was anxious to find a job.

她完成学业后，很希望找到一份工作。

I saw him being taken away by the police. 我看见他被警察带走。

The subject having been opened, he had to go on with it.

话题已经开始了，他不得不谈下去。

##### (2) 现在分词的否定式

分词的否定式一般是将否定词 not 置于分词之前，遇上现在分词的完成式、被动式以及完成被动式，否定词应置于整个结构之前。

Not being able to understand English, he didn't know what they wanted.

由于不懂英语，他不知道他们要什么。

Not having finished his work, he could not leave the office.

由于工作没干完他不能离开办公室。

## 2. 现在分词的用法

现在分词表示主动或进行，在句子中作表语、补语、定语、状语等。

### (1) 作表语

现在分词用在系动词后作表语，用来说明主语的性质与特征。

有些用作表语的现在分词具有形容词性质，甚至已转化为形容词，常用来修饰物。

The programme for the weekend looks exciting. 周末的节目看来很令人激动。

That sounds very interesting. 那听起来倒挺有意思的。

### (2) 作补语

①现在分词一般用在被动语态中作主语补语。

She was heard singing all the time. 人们听到她一直在唱歌。

He was found lying on the floor. 他被发现躺在地板上。

②现在分词作宾语补语

在现在分词作宾语补语的结构中，谓语动词一般是感知动词（如：feel, hear, listen to, look at, see, watch, notice, observe, keep, find 等）或者是使役动词（如：have, get, leave, catch, set 等），一般表示动作的进行。

I saw them forcing the door open with a hammer. 我看见他们强行用锤子砸门。

He heard some women and children crying. 他听见有些妇女和孩子在哭。

Don't have the students studying all day. 别让学生们整天学习。

### (3) 作定语

单独的现在分词作定语一般放在所修饰词之前，而现在分词短语作定语则放在所修饰词之后。

They quickly moved the sleeping man out of the prison.

他们迅速把那个睡着的男人转移到监狱外。

We've had a telephone message from your father telling us that you were on the train.

我们接到你父亲的电话，告诉我们你在火车上。

### 【注意】

现在分词的完成式一般不作定语

现在分词作后置定语时，它所表示的动作通常不能发生在主句谓语动作之前，这也就是为什么现在分词的完成式不能用作后置定语的原因。

The man who had stolen the car was caught. 偷汽车的那个人被抓了。

### (4) 作状语

现在分词作状语可以表示时间、原因、条件、目的、让步、方式、伴随、结果等多种关系。

Having finished his homework, the boy was allowed to watch TV.

男孩完成作业后，才被允许看电视。（表时间）

Having plenty of money, he was able to travel at once.

他有了很多钱，所以能立刻去旅游了。(表原因)

We opened the window, letting the fresh air in.

我们打开窗户，让新鲜空气进来。(结果状语)

Adding them all up, we can find the answer.

如果把它们加起来，我们就可以得到答案。(表条件)

Knowing no one in Paris, he joined a group of musicians.

虽然在巴黎谁也不认识，他还是参加了一个音乐家小组。(表让步)

He died, leaving his wife with five children.

他死了，留下他妻子和五个孩子。(表伴随)

### 【注意】

现在分词作状语，其逻辑主语与主句主语一致。

## (二) 过去分词

### 1. 过去分词的形式

过去分词分两类，一类是规则动词，由原形动词+ed 构成，如 started, excited, copied, stepped 等；一类是不规则动词，如 dug, thrown, written 等。

过去分词只有一般式，即 done，表示被动与完成，没有完成式。

Built in 1501, the bridge is over 500 years old. 这座桥建于 1501 年，已有五百多年的历史。

He came in, followed by his secretary. 他走了进来，后面跟着他的秘书。

### 2. 过去分词的用法

过去分词表被动与完成，在句中作表语、补语、定语、状语等。

#### (1) 作表语

过去分词用在系动词后作表语，用来说明主语的特点与状态。

有些用作表语的过去分词具有形容词性质，甚至已转化为形容词。常用来修饰人。

Hearing the news, he got frightened. 听到这个消息，他吓坏了。

The library is now closed. 图书馆现在关闭着。

### 【注意】

过去分词作表语与被动语态的区别

过去分词作表语，主要是表示主语的状态，而被动语态则表示动作。

The cup was broken by my little sister yesterday. 茶杯是我小妹昨天打碎的。(被动语态，表示动作)

The cup is broken. 茶杯碎了。(过去分词作表语，表示状态)

#### (2) 作补语(用法同现在分词)

①过去分词短语一般用在被动语态中作主语补语。

The fire is reported controlled. 火情据报已被控制。

He was seen angered at the delay. 人们看见他对这次延迟表示愤怒。

②过去分词作为宾语补足语

在过去分词作宾语补语的结构中，谓语动词一般是感知动词(如: feel, hear, listen to, look at, see, watch, notice, observe, keep, find 等)或者是使役动词(如: have, get, leave, catch, set 等)，一般表示动作被动与完成。

I heard the song sung in English. 我听到有人用英语唱过这首歌。

He got his tooth pulled out yesterday. 他昨天把牙拔了。

Don't leave those things undone. 把那些事情做完。

### 【注意】

在“have+宾语+宾语补足语（过去分词）”的结构中，过去分词所表示的动作往往是由别人来完成的。

I had my tape recorder repaired. 录音机修好了。（别人修好的）

### （3）作定语

作定语用的过去分词相当于形容词，其逻辑主语就是它所修饰的名词。及物动词的过去分词作定语，既表被动又表完成；不及物动词的过去分词作定语，只表完成。

单个过去分词作定语时，放在被修饰的词前，分词短语作定语时，一般总是放在它所修饰的词之后。

We must adapt our thinking to the changed conditions. 我们必须使我们的思想适应改变了的情况。

The concert given by their friends was a success. 由他们的朋友举行的那场音乐会很成功。

### （4）作状语

过去分词作状语表示被动的和完成的动作，此时，分词的逻辑主语是句子的主语，并与其构成被动关系。过去分词可放在主句前作句首状语，后面有逗号与主句隔开；也可放在主句后面，前面有逗号与主句隔开。

过去分词或分词短语在句中作时间、原因、条件、结果、伴随、方式状语等。

Seen from the hill, the park looks very beautiful. （时间状语）

Given more time, we could do it much better. （条件状语）

The teacher stood there, surrounded by the students. （方式状语）

Greatly touched by the teacher's words, he did a lot of things to help his classmates. （原因状语）

## 四、易混用法辨析

### 1. 不定式、-ing 分词及动词的过去分词做表语

一般说来，不定式作表语，相当于名词，说明主语的内容，回答 what 所提的问题；-ing 分词作表语时，有时与不定式一样，相当于名词，说明主语的内容，回答 what 所提的问题，有时又与过去分词一样，相当于形容词，说明主语的性质、特征，而过去分词说明主语的状态或心情，回答 how 所提出的问题。

（1）相当于名词。如：

My job is to drive the car. = My job is driving the car. 我的工作就是开这辆小车。

（2）相当于形容词。如：

The story is interesting. 这个故事很有趣。

The mug is broken. 这口茶缸破了。

### 2. 不定式、-ing 分词及动词的过去分词做宾语补足语

（1）不定式做宾语补足语，强调动作的全过程；-ing 分词做宾语补足语，强调动作正在进行；动词的过去分词做宾语补足语时，及物动词的过去分词表完成和被动，不及物动词的过去分词只表完成。

如：

I saw him go into the teachers' office. 我看见他进入了老师的办公室。

I found them walking in the street. 我发现他们在街上溜达。

He spoke slowly to make himself understood better. 他说得很慢以使自己更好地被人理解。

### 【注意】

感知动词接宾语补足语时，若是持续性动词，一般只能用-ing 分词，而不能用不定式形式做宾语的补足语，如：

I saw them play basketball this morning. 从语法角度来看是正确的，但从意义角度来考虑是错误的，因为，若无特殊原因，你不可能把他们打篮球的全过程看完，因此本句应该改为：I saw them playing basketball this morning.

(2) 只能接不定式做宾语补足语的动词（短语）：advise, allow, ask, beg, cause, encourage, expect, force, forbid, get, help, order, permit, persuade, require, teach, tell, want, wish, warn, call on, wait for, long for, 但当这些动词（短语）改为被动语态时，不定式就成了主语的补足语。如：

The school doesn't allow us to swim in the river. 学校不允许我们下河游泳。

Father encourages me to do what I like. 父亲鼓励我去做我所喜欢的事情。

(3) 一般要接-ing 分词做宾语补足语的动词：consider, find, keep, leave, send, suggest。如：

Don't leave the children making noises there. 不要让孩子们在那儿吵闹。

Add some wood to keep the fire burning. 添一些木材使火继续燃起来。

### 【注意】

consider, find 等一般不能接不定式作宾语补足语，但可接 to be, to have done 做宾语补足语。如：

When I got there, I found the work to have been finished. 当我到达那儿时，我发现工作已被做完了。

### 3. 不定式、-ing 分词及动词的过去分词做定语

(1) 不定式和过去分词做定语时，表示中心词跟逻辑主语之间存在着主谓或动宾关系，说明主语的内容；-ing 分词做定语时，有两种情况：其一，与不定式作定语时一样，中心词跟逻辑主语之间也存在着主谓或动宾关系，其二，与名词一样，表示中心词的内容、用途、目的。如：

The text to be learnt tomorrow is said to be very difficult. 明天要学的那篇课文据说很难。

The song learnt last week is very interesting. 上周所学的那首歌很有趣。

The sleeping boy is Li Lei's brother. 正在睡觉的男孩是李蕾的弟弟。

The sleeping bag is broken. 睡袋破了。

The boiled water can be drunk. 开水可以被饮用。

(2) 不定式作定语时，表示即将发生的动作；-ing 分词作定语时，表示正在发生的动作；动词的过去分词作定语时，表示已经完成的动作。如：

The question to be discussed this afternoon is very important. 今天要讨论的问题很重要。

The question being discussed now is very important. 现在所讨论的问题很重要。

The question discussed last night is very important. 昨晚所讨论的问题很重要。

(3) -ing 分词作定语时，表示事物的性质或特征；动词的过去分词作定语时，表示人的心理状态。如：

an exciting event 扣人心弦的事件

an excited speech 激动的话语

an interesting story 有趣的故事

an interested boy 感兴趣的男孩

a moving deed 一件感人的事迹

a moved group 很受感动的人群

a frightening dog 令人害怕的狗  
a frightened boy 感到害怕的男孩  
an exhausting job 令人疲倦的工作  
an exhausted expression 疲惫的表情  
an embarrassing situation 令人尴尬的处境  
an embarrassed behavior 不自在的行为

#### 4. 不定式、-ing 分词及动词的过去分词做状语

不定式做状语主要表示目的、原因和结果；-ing 分词及动词的过去分词做状语主要表示原因、时间、结果、条件、让步、伴随、方式。

##### (1) 作原因状语

不定式、-ing 分词都作表示原因的状态语，但范围不同。不定式只能在表示情感方面的形容词后做原因状语。如：

I'm glad to meet you. 见到你很高兴。

Being late, I was kept here after school. 由于迟到了，放学后我被留在这儿。

##### (2) 作结果状语

不定式、-ing 分词都作表示结果的状态语，但不定式只表示出乎意料的结果；而-ing 分词表示一种自然的结果。如：

I bought an expensive computer home yesterday, only to find it used.

我昨天买了一台昂贵的电脑回来，结果发现它已被人使用过。

He ran very fast breaking the record of our school. 他跑得很快，结果打破了学校的纪录。

##### (3) 其他情况

-ing 分词及过去分词不能做目的的状态语；不定式不能作时间、条件、让步、伴随、方式状语。

## 第八节、连词

连词是一种虚词，它不能独立担任句子成分而只起连接词与词，短语与短语以及句与句的作用。

连词主要可分为两类：并列连词和从属连词。

★ 要点提示：

◇ 掌握常见的并列连词、从属连词及其含义

◇ 常用连词辨析

◇ rather than 的用法

【知识点拨】

### 一、并列连词

并列连词用来连接平行的词、词组和分句。如：and, but, or, nor, so, therefore, yet, however, for, hence, as well as, both...and..., not only...but also..., either...or..., neither...nor..., (and)then 等等。

作用	主要连词
表并列关系	and, both...and..., not only...but also..., neither...nor..., as well as, rather than 等 注意：(1) and 作为并列连词，意为“和，并且”：He bought a book and a pen. (2)“go (come, stop 等)+and+动词”中的“and+动词”相当于“in order to+动词”： I will go and bring back your tools. (3)“祈使句+逗号+and+一般将来时陈述句”相当于“if 从句+主句”： Work hard, and you will succeed.=If you work hard, you will succeed.
表选择关系	or, either...or...等 注意：(1)or 表示选择，意为“或，还是”：Would you prefer tea or coffee? (2)“祈使句+逗号+or (else)+一般将来时的陈述句”，相当于“if...not +主句”： Hurry up, or you will be late for school. =If you don't hurry up, you will be late for school.
表转折关系	but, yet, however, while (而), only (只不过)等 注意：but 还可以用于“I am sorry but...”, “Excuse me but...”句型中： I am sorry but I won't be able to come tonight.
表因果关系	for, so 等 It must have rained last night, for it is wet all over. The shops were closed, so I didn't get any milk.

### Rather than 用法归纳

用法	例句
rather than 与 would 连用表示心情，相当于情态动词	would rather do sth. than do sth. would do sth. rather than do sth. She'd rather die than lose the children. 她宁愿死也不愿失去孩子们。

“而不愿”	prefer to do sth. rather than do sth. “宁愿……而不愿……”	
rather than 意为 “是……而不是……；与其……倒不如说……”。它是连词，它前后的成分在词性上应该一致，它连接的并列成分可以是名词、代词、形容词、介词（短语）、动名词、分句、不定式、动词等。	连接两个名词或代词 (注意: rather than 连接两个名词或代词作主语时, 谓语动词应与 rather than 前面的名词或代词在人称和数上	He needs thinking alone rather than finishing the task instantly. 他需要的是独立思考而不是立即完成这项任务。 You rather than I are going to go camping.
	连接两个形容词	The sweater she bought was beautiful rather than cheap. 与其说她买的这件羊毛衫便宜不如说它
	连接两个介词（短语）或动名词	We will have the meeting in the classroom rather than in the great hall. 我们将在教室里开会，而不是在大厅里。 She enjoys singing rather than dancing. 她喜欢唱歌而不喜欢跳舞
	连接两个分句	We should help him rather than he should help us. 是我们应该帮助他而不是他应该帮助我
	连接两个不定式	I decided to write rather than (to) telephone. 我决定写信而不是打电话。

## 二、从属连词

定义：从属连词是连词的一种，用来引导名词性从句和状语从句。连词用于引导从句以形成句子的一部分或修饰句子的构成要素。由从属连词所引导的句子叫从句，而含有从句的句子叫作复合句。

（详见状语从句部分）

# 第三章 句法攻克

## 第一节、主谓一致

★ 要点提示:

- ◇ 语法一致原则
- ◇ 意义一致原则
- ◇ 就近原则
- ◇ 就远原则

主谓一致讲主语和谓语之间存在的规律。一致指句子成分之间或词语之间在性、数等方面应保持一致。主谓一致指谓语动词与主语必须在人称、数上保持一致。在具体处理一致关系时可遵循以下原则:语法一致、意义一致、就近原则、就远原则。

【知识点拨】

### 一、语法一致

主谓一致最基本的就是语法一致原则,即作主语的名词词组中心词和谓语动词要在单、复数形式上保持一致。

Few students are (be) really lazy.

Every girl comes (come) on time.

下面为大家讲解有关语法一致的一些情况:谓语受主语支配,即谓语动词的形式必须随着主语单复数形式的变化,供大家学习参考。

#### 1. 以单数名词或代词、不定式、动名词短语或从句作主语时,谓语动词要用单数形式。

The book is on the table.

It is hard to finish the task.

To work hard is necessary.

Going out for a walk after supper is a good habit.

How you get there is a problem.

【注意】

(1) what 引导的从句作主语,如果表语是复数名词,谓语动词用复数。

What they want are financial aids. 他们需要的是经济援助。

(2) 当 what 引导的从句是一个带有复数意义的并列结构时,谓语动词用复数。

What I say and think are no business of yours. 我说的和我想的不关你的事。

(3) that 引导的从句作主语,无论置于句首还是句末,谓语动词通常用单数。

That he is still alive is sheer luck. 他仍然活着纯属侥幸。

It is very interesting that he likes books of this kind. 他喜欢这种书,这件事很有趣。

2. each, every, either, one, another, neither 以及由 some, any, no, every 构成的复合代词作主语时, 谓语动词用单数形式。

Each takes a cup of tea.

Either is correct.

Neither plan suits me.

Nothing but trees was to be seen.

3. 不可数名词没有复数形式, 作主语时, 谓语动词用单数形式。

Water is a kind of matter.

The news at six o'clock is true.

4. 复数主语跟复数动词。

Children like to play toys.

## 二、意义一致

有时, 主语和谓语动词的一致关系并非取决于语法上的单、复数形式, 而是取决于主语的单、复数意义。比如有时主语在语法形式上并非复数, 但有复数意义, 随后的动词使用复数; 反之, 主语在语法形式上是复数, 而在意义上可视为单数, 随后的动词也用单数。

That group have (have) the best ratings of individual performance.

Fifty-six dollars was (be) stolen from the cash register.

下面介绍一些有关意义一致的相关情况, 供大家学习参考。

1. 集体名词作主语时, 谓语动词的单复数情况。

集体名词在句中意指整体概念, 谓语动词用单数形式; 在句中意指其具体成员, 谓语动词用复数形式。这类集体名词包括: army, audience, class, committee, crowd, crew, family, group, team, party,

company, government, jury 等。

The crew consists of 20 sailors. 船上人员由二十名水手组成。

The crew are divided as to the best way to cook the fish. 船员们对用什么方法做鱼最好意见不一。

The audience were greatly moved at the words. 听了这些话听众都很感动。

The audience was enormous. 观众人数很多。

My family is going to have a long journey. 我家要进行一次长途旅行。

My family are fond of music. 我的家人都喜欢音乐。

### 【注意】

作复数的集合名词, 如 people, police, cattle 等作主语, 谓语动词用复数形式。

作不可数名词的集合名词, 如 furniture, equipment, machinery 等作主语时, 谓语动词用单数形式。

The police are searching for him. 警察正在搜捕他。

All the machinery in the factory is made in China. 这家工厂所有的机器都是中国制造的。

2. 单复数同形的名词作主语时, 谓语动词的单复数情况。

单复数同形的名词作主语时, 要根据句子意思来确定谓语动词的单复数形式。

单复数同形的名词包括: aircraft (航天器), deer, fish, sheep, means, species, series, works, crossroads, headquarters 等。

Various means of transport are introduced in this article. 本文介绍了各种运输方式。

Every means is tried to solve the problem. 人们想尽一切办法来解决这个问题。

### 3. and 连接的两个名词作主语时，谓语动词的单复数情况。

一般情况下，and 连接的两个名词作主语时，谓语动词用复数形式。

但有些情况下，and 连接的两个名词意指同一人物、同一事物、同一概念时，谓语动词要用单数形式。

通常，如果两个名词只有一个限定词或无限定词修饰时，它们常常表示一个概念，如果两个名词分别由两个限定词修饰时，它们往往表示两个不同的概念。

另外，如果 and 连接的两个单数名词均有 each, every, many a, no 等词修饰时，谓语动词用单数形式。

The tenth and the last chapter are written by Bruce. 第十章和最后一章是布鲁斯写的。

The red and the white rose were withering in the cold. 红玫瑰和白玫瑰冻得凋谢了。

The singer and the dancer have arrived. 那位歌唱家和那位舞蹈家已经到达。

The singer and dancer has arrived. 那位歌唱家兼舞蹈家已经到达。

War and peace is a constant theme in history. 战争与和平是历史上永恒的主题。

Bread and butter is a daily food in the west. 抹黄油的面包是西方的日常食品。

Each man and each woman is asked to help. 要求所有男人和妇女都来帮忙。

### 4. the + 形容词(或过去分词)作主语时，常指一类人，谓语动词用复数形式。

The young are usually very active. 年轻人通常是很活跃的。

The wounded are being taken good care of here now. 现在伤病员们在这里受到了很好的照顾。

### 5. 关系代词 who, that, which 等在定语从句中作主语时，其谓语动词的数应与句中先行词的数一致。

Those who want to go please sign their names here.

Anyone who is against this opinion may speak out.

He is one of the students who were praised at the meeting.

She is the only one of the girls who is interested in literature.

#### 【注意】

one of+复数名词+定语从句，定语从句修饰复数名词，从句谓语动词用复数。

the only one of+复数名词+定语从句，定语从句修饰单数名词，从句谓语动词用单数。

### 6. 学科名称作主语时，谓语动词的单复数情况

某些学科名称虽是复数形式，但这些词作主语时，谓语动词仍用单数形式。

这些词包括：electronics (电子学)，mechanics (力学)，classics (古典文学)，linguistics (语言学)，economics (经济学)，statistics (统计学)，physics (物理学)，mathematics (数学) 等。

Electronics is a piece of cake to him.

【注意】以-ics 结尾的名词如果表示的是一门学科，动词用单数；如果指特定事物，动词用复数。

	单数	复数
statistics	统计学	统计数字
tactics	兵法	策略
athletics	体育课	体育运动
mathematics	数学	数学能力

politics	政治	政见
economics	经济学	经济情况
mechanics	机械学	技巧, 机械部分
acoustics	声学	音响效果

**7. 表示书名、报名、剧名、国名等的名词或词组作主语时, 主语与谓语动词一致。**

表示书名、报名、剧名、国名等的名词(或词组)作主语时, 如只指一种、一本或一个, 不论它形式上是单数还是复数, 谓语动词只用单数形式。

*The New York Times* is not available here.

The United States was founded in 1776.

**8. 表示时间、距离、度量、价值的复数名词作主语时, 谓语动词的单复数情况。**

这些复数名词, 如表示抽象概念, 被视作一个整体时, 谓语动词用单数形式; 如表示具体的多少, 强调复数意义时, 谓语动词用复数形式。

Eighty miles was covered in a single night. 一夜之间就走了八十英里。

Ten dollars is not enough to pay for the book. 买这本书十美元不够。

Fifteen tons is the maximum capacity of the bridge. 这座桥的最大载重量是十五吨。

Twenty years have passed since his parents died. 他父母去世已经二十年了。

One hundred tons of water were used last month. 上个月使用了一百吨水。

**【注意】**

分数和百分数修饰名词作主语时, 谓语的单复数取决于名词。

Only 20 % of the work was done. 只干了20%的活。

About 20 % of the students are absent. 约20%的学生缺席。

Two thirds of the books are worth reading. 三分之二的书值得一读。

**9. 由表示“种类、数量、单位的名词+of”修饰名词作主语时, 其动词往往与表示“种类、数量、单位的名词”保持一致。**

There is a kind of roses in the garden. 花园里有一种玫瑰花。

There are many kinds of apples. 苹果有许多种。

Three million tons of coal were exported last year. 去年出口了三百万吨煤。

Two pieces of cake were divided among the children. 孩子们分吃了两块蛋糕。

**10. the number of +名词复数, 是表示“……的数字”, 作主语时, 谓语动词用单数形式;**

a (large/great) number of +名词复数, 表示“许多”, 作主语时, 谓语动词用复数形式。

The number of the students in our school is increasing year after year.

A number of students have gone for an outing.

**三、特殊一致**

**(一) 就近原则**

1. 谓语动词的单、复数形式决定于最靠近它的词语（主要指名词）的单、复数形式。主要包括：  
there be 句型，还有连词 or, either...or..., neither...nor..., not only...but also..., not... but...等连接的并列成分。

There is a teacher and three students in the classroom.

Either you or I am going to the movies.

Not only he but also his family members are interested in football match.

Neither your unkind words nor your unfriendly attitude has caused me any distress.

2. 在倒装句中，动词的数应和它后面的主语的单数一致。如：以 here, there 开头，be 动词与后面第一个名词一致。

Here comes the bus.

On the wall were two famous paintings.

Here is Mr. Brown and his children.

## （二）就远原则

谓语动词的单、复数形式取决于离它较远的词语的情况。主要是指主语后面有 with, together with, as well as, no less than, along with, like, rather than, but, except, including, in addition to 等词或短语+名词时，谓语动词不受这些词或短语的影响，仍然与主语保持一致。

No one except my parents knows anything about it. 除了我父母谁也不知道此事。

The actress, along with her manager and some friends, is going to a party tonight.

这位女演员今晚和她的经理人及一些朋友一起去参加一个晚会。

Physics, as well as mathematics, is an important branch of science.

物理学如同数学是一门重要的科学学科。

One man with his wife, both looking very anxious, was asking the guard to let them through.

有个男人和他的妻子看上去都很着急，正在那儿央求卫兵放他们过去。

## 第二节、 名词性从句

★ 要点提示:

- ◇ 主语从句的连接词
- ◇ 宾语从句的引导词、语序、时态
- ◇ 表语从句的连接词
- ◇ 同位语从句的先行词和引导词

【知识点拨】

名词性从句是在句中主要起名词作用各类从句的统称, 主要包括主语从句、宾语从句、表语

从属连	that, if, whether
连接代	who, whoever, whom, whomever, which, whichever, what, whatever, w
连接副	where, when, why, how

其中, 从属连词只起连接作用, 在从句中不充当任何句法成分, 而连接代词和连接副词在从句中既保留自己的疑问含义、又起连接作用, 在从句中充当从句的成分。

That Owen married his cousin is not at all surprising. (that 引导主语从句)

The fact is that he didn't go to the dinner party. (that 引导表语从句)

I don't know if he will attend the meeting. (that 引导宾语从句)

Have you heard the news that Mary is going to marry Tom? (that 引导同位语从句)

### 一、 主语从句

主语从句的连接词包括从属连词、连接代词与连接副词三种。

#### (一) 从属连词 **that, whether**

that 引导主语从句只起引导作用, 本身无实际意义, 在主语从句中不充当任何成分, 但不能省略。

that 引导的主语从句可放在句首, 也可放在句中。

由 whether (or not) 引导的主语从句放在句首、句中都可以。

That he became a doctor may have been due to his father's influence.

他成为医生可能是由于他父亲的影响。

It's a pity that you missed such a fine speech. 这样好的演讲你没听到真是可惜。

Whether it will please them is not easy to say. 能否取悦他们并不容易。

It won't make too much difference whether (or not) he will go. 他去不去都一样。

It is uncertain whether he will attend the meeting. 他是否会出席会议还不确定。

#### (二) 连接代词 **who, whoever, whom, whomever, which, whichever, what, whatever, whose**

What seems easy to some people seems difficult to others. (主语)

Which side will win is not clear. (which 作 side 的定语)

Whoever told you that was lying. (主语)

Whatever we have achieved is attributed to the guidance of our teachers. (宾语)

### (三) 连接副词 **where, when, why, how**

连接副词可以引导主语从句，在句中作时间、地点、原因以及方式状语。

Why he did it remains a mystery. (原因状语)

When he will come is not known. (时间状语)

Where the English evening will be held has not yet been announced. (地点状语)

How this happened is not clear to anyone. (方式状语)

#### 【注意】

(1) 主语从句中用 **it** 作形式主语

有时为避免句子头重脚轻，常用形式主语 **it** 代替主语从句作形式主语放于句首，而把主语从句之余句末。注意此时 **that** 不能省掉，前面也不能再加 **what**。

It is well known that water is indispensable to life.

众所周知，水是生命不可或缺的东西。

#### 常见结构：

It +be+名词+that 从句

It+be+形容词+that 从句

It+be+动词的过去分词+that 从句

It+不及物动词+that 从句

(2) 主语从句用陈述语序。

What she is afraid of is their taking her to Paris. 她害怕的是他们带她去巴黎。

(3) 主语从句后谓语动词用第三人称单数。

That they haven't phoned is strange. 他们还没有打电话真是奇怪。

## 二、宾语从句

置于动词、介词等词性后面起宾语作用的从句叫宾语从句。宾语从句的语序必须是陈述语序。

谓语动词、介词、动词不定式，**v-ing** 形式后面都能带宾语从句。有些形容词 (**afraid, sure, glad** 等) 之后也可以带宾语从句。

### 宾语从句引导词

宾语从句中引导词的用法在复合句中作主句的宾语，引导词有：

连词：**that** (**that** 常可省略), **whether, if**

代词：**who, whom, whose, what, which**

副词：**when, where, how, why** 等。

#### (一) 宾语从句引导词分类

##### 1. **that** 引导的宾语从句 (在非正式场合 **that** 可以省略)

可跟 **that** 从句做宾语的动词有：

**say, think, insist, wish, hope, demand, imagine, wonder, know, suppose, see, believe, agree, admit, deny, expect, explain, order, command, feel, dream, suggest, hear, mean, notice, prefer, request, require, propose, declare, report** 等。

e.g. The boy believes that he will travel through space to other planets.

### 【注意】

(1) 当主句谓语动词是 *think, believe, suppose, expect* 等词, 而宾语从句的意思是否定时, 常把否定转移至主句表示。

e.g. I don't think (that) it is right for him to treat you like that.

(2) 在以下情况中 *that* 不能省略

① 当句中的动词后接多于两个由 *that* 引导的宾语从句时, 第一个 *that* 可省, 但后面的 *that* 不可省。

e.g. He said (that) you were too young to understand the matter and that he was asked not to tell you.

② 当主句的谓语动词与 *that* 宾语从句之间有插入语时, *that* 一般不可省。

e.g. Just then I noticed, for the first time, that our master was wearing his fine green coat and his black silk cap.

③ 当 *that* 从句是双宾语中的直接宾语时, *that* 不可省。

e.g. I can't tell him that his mother died.

(3) 许多带复合宾语的句子, *that* 引导的宾语从句经常移到句子后部, 而用 *it* 作形式宾语。

e.g. I find it necessary that we should do the homework on time.

## 2. 由 *whether, if* 引导的宾语从句

由 *whether, if* 引导的宾语从句, 实际上是一般疑问句演变而来的, 意思是“是否”。宾语从句要用陈述句语序。一般说来, 在宾语从句中 *whether* 与 *if* 可以互换使用, 但在特殊情况下 *if* 与 *whether* 是不能互换的。

e.g. I wonder whether(if) they will come to our party.

(1) 只能用 *whether* 不能用 *if* 引导的宾语从句:

① 在带 *to* 的不定式前

e.g. We decided whether to walk there.

② 在介词的后面

e.g. I'm thinking of whether we should go to see the film.

③ 直接与 *or not* 连用时

e.g. I can't say whether or not they can come on time.

(2) 只能用 *if* 不能用 *whether* 引导的宾语从句

*if* 引导否定概念的宾语从句时

e.g. He asked if I didn't come to school yesterday.

## 3. 连接代词和连接副词引导的宾语从句

这样的宾语从句实际上是由特殊疑问句变化而来的, 宾语从句要用陈述句语序。用于这种结构的动词常常是: *see, say, tell, ask, answer, know, decide, show, find out, imagine, suggest, doubt, wonder, discover, understand, inform, advise* 等。

英语中的连接代词有: *who, whom, whose, which, what*, 在从句中担任主语、宾语、定语或者表语。

e.g. Can you tell me whom you are waiting for? (*whom* 作介词 *for* 的宾语)

英语中的连接副词有: *when, where, why, how*, 在从句中担任状语的成分。

e.g. None of us knows where these new parts can be bought. (地点状语)

## (二) 宾语从句注意点

### 1. 宾语从句的语序

宾语从句的语序是陈述句语序，即：连接代词/副词+主语+谓语+其他成分。

e.g. I don't know what they are looking for.

Could you tell me when the train will leave?

Can you imagine what kind of man he is?

### 2. 宾语从句的时态

(1) 主句是一般现在时，从句根据实际情况使用任何时态。

e.g. The headmaster hopes everything goes well.

(2) 主句是过去时态，从句须用过去时态的某种形式。

e.g. She was sorry that she hadn't finished her work on time.

(3) 当宾语从句表示的是一个客观真理或者事实时，即使主句是过去时，从句也用一般现在时态。

e.g. The teacher told his students that light travels faster than sound.

### ✚ 宾语从句的特点总结：

(1) 宾语从句可以作及物动词、介词及形容词的宾语。

(2) 宾语从句的语序一律用陈述句语序。

(3) 连接词 **that** 引导宾语从句在句中无词义，不充当句子成份，多数情况下可以省略。

(4) 如果从句太长，可以用形式宾语 **it**。

(5) **whether** 和 **if** 都可引导宾语从句，但 **whether** 后可紧跟 **or not**; **whether** 从句可作介词的宾语。

## 三、表语从句

表语从句常常放在主句系动词后面，对主语的内容起解释、进一步阐明的作用。

可以接表语从句的系动词有 **be, look, remain, seem** 等。

引导词：**that** (通常不能省), **whether, where, when, why, how, who, which, what** 等。

三种连接词

### (一) 从属连词 **that, whether**

当 **that** 引导表语从句时，只起连接作用，不在表语从句中充当任何句子成分，且不可省略。

当表语从句要表达“是否”的含义时，连接词要用 **whether**，不用 **if**。

One advantage of solar energy is that it will never run out.

太阳能优点之一是它取之不尽。

The question remains whether we can win the majority of the people.

问题是我们是否能赢得大多数人的支持。

### (二) 连接代词与连接副词 **what/who/whom/whose/which, when/where/why/how** 等

连接代词引导表语从句，既起着连接作用，同时又在从句中充当句子成分，可以作主语、宾语、定语等。

连接副词引导表语从句，既起着连接作用，同时又在从句中充当句子成分，一般作状语。

Her question is who has broken the glass. 她的问题是谁打碎了杯子。(主语)

Their worry is whom she can rely on. 他们担忧的是她能依靠谁。(宾语)

This is where you are mistaken. 这就是你的错误所在。(地点状语)

This is why I got scolded. 这就是我受到训斥的原因。(原因状语)

### (三) 特殊连接词

除了以上常见的连接词外，还有一些特殊的连接词可以用来连接表语从句。

#### (1) just as

表示“正如”，经常与系动词 look/seem/appear 搭配使用。

She looks just as she was ten years ago. 她看起来和十年前一样。

#### (2) as if/though

表示“好像”，也常与系动词 look/seem/appear 搭配使用。

It looks as if/though it's going to rain soon. 看来天快要下雨了。

【注意】当不表示真实情况时，as if/though 后面表语从句中的谓语动词一般采用虚拟语气形式，其用法是：该谓语动词的时态要采用相应的过去时态。

They looked as if/though they had lived here for a long time.

看起来他们好像在这生活了很久。

其他常见结构

1. The reason why... is that... .....的原因是.....

The reason why he was late for school was that he got up late.

他上学迟到的原因是他起床晚了。

2. That is because ... 原因是.....，后面接原因

He was late for school. That was because he got up late.

他上学迟到了，因为他起床晚了。

3. That is why.....的原因，后面接结果

He got up late. That's why he was late for school.

他起床晚了，那就是他上学迟到的原因。

## 四、同位语从句

同位语：使用同位语则说明前后两部分指的是同一个东西。

一般跟在某些名词后面，用以说明该名词表示的具体内容。

### (一) 同位语从句的先行词

能够跟同位语从句的名词多为表示事实、看法、思想、消息等的名词。主要有：

fact, idea, news, belief, hope, conclusion, opinion, suggestion, proposal, proof, order, thought, doubt, rumor, problem, truth, answer, theory, discovery, understanding, wish, promise, evidence (证据), likelihood (可能性) 等。

The problem that they can't get here early is hard to solve.

他们不能及早到达这里，这个问题很难解决。

No one can deny the fact that he has made such progress.

没有人能否认他取得如此进步的事实。

The order has come that the work be done at once.

工作应立刻开始的命令已经到了。

The news that we are invited to the conference is very encouraging.

我们受邀参加会议的消息真是鼓舞人心。

## (二) 同位语从句的引导词

(1) 常见引导词是 **that, whether**

I heard the news that our team had won.

The question whether we ought to call in a specialist was answered by the family doctor. 家庭医生回答了我们是否应请个专科大夫的问题。

(2) 同位语从句也常由连接副词 **why, where, when, how** 等引导。

I have no idea when he will come back. 我不知道他什么时候回来。

He had no idea why she left. 他不知道她为什么离开。

### 【注意】

(1) 有时同位语从句可以不紧跟在先行词后，而被别的词隔开，保持句子平衡。

Word had come from Tom that he could arrive on the Monday following.

汤姆说过他可能下星期一来。

(2) 在同位语从句中，**that** 不可省略。

(3) **if** 与 **which** 不能引导同位语从句。

### 第三节、 定语从句

定语从句 (Attributive Clauses) 在从句中做定语, 修饰一个名词、名词词组或代词, 被修饰的名词、词组或代词即先行词。定语从句通常出现在先行词之后, 由关系词 (关系代词或关系副词) 引出。

关系代词有: who, whom, whose, that, which, as 等。

关系副词有: when, where, why 等。

关系词常有 3 个作用:

- (1) 连接作用, 引导定语从句。
- (2) 代替主句中的先行词, 甚至可能是主句中的一部分或整个主句。
- (3) 在定语从句中充当句子成分。

★ 要点提示:

- ◇ 定语从句的关系词
- ◇ “介词+关系词”结构的用法
- ◇ 关系代词 that 的用法
- ◇ as 与 which 的区别
- ◇ 限制性和非限制性定语从句
- ◇ 同位语从句与定语从句的区别

【知识点拨】

#### 一、 定语从句的关系词

##### (一) 关系代词引导的定语从句

关系代词所代替的先行词是人或物的名词或代词, 并在句中充当主语、宾语、定语等成分。关系代词在定语从句中作主语时, 从句谓语动词的人称和数要和先行词保持一致。

##### 1. who, whom, that

这些词代替的先行词是人的名词或代词, 在从句中所起作用如下:

Is he the man who/that wants to see you?

他就是想见你的人吗? (who/that 在从句中作主语)

He is the man (whom/that) I saw yesterday.

他就是我昨天见的那个人。(whom/that 在从句中作宾语, 可省略)

##### 2. which, that

它们所代替的先行词是事物的名词或代词, 在从句中可作主语、宾语等, 如:

A prosperity which/that had never been seen before appeared in the countryside. 农村出现了前所未有的繁荣。(which/that 在从句中作主语)

The package (which / that) you are carrying is about to come unwrapped. 你拿的包快散了。(which / that 在句中作宾语, 可省略)

3. whose 用来指人或物, (只用作定语, 若指物, 它还可以同 of which 互换), 如:

They rushed over to help the man whose car had broken down.

那人车坏了，大家都跑过去帮忙。

Please pass me the book whose (of which) cover is green. 请递给我那本绿皮的书。

#### 4. as

(1) 与 such, the same, as 连用，意为“像……一样的，同……一类的”，如：

I live in the same place as Tom does. 我和汤姆住在同处。

He's not such a fool as he looks. 他并不像看上去的那样愚蠢。

He smokes as expensive a cigarette as he can afford. 他抽一种他买得起的最贵的烟。

(2) 单独用作关系代词，意为“正如”，可放在主句之前、之后或中间，且主从句之间一般要用逗号隔开。如：

As we know, smoking is harmful to one's health. (as 充当 know 的宾语)

As is known, smoking is harmful to one's health. (as 充当从句的主语)

#### (二) 关系副词引导的定语从句

关系副词可代替的先行词是时间、地点或理由的名词，在从句中作状语。

##### 1. when, where, why

关系副词 when, where, why 的含义相当于“介词+ which”结构，因此常常和“介词+ which”结构交替使用，例如：

There are occasions when (on which) one must yield.

任何人都有不得不屈服的时候。

Beijing is the place where (in which) I was born. 北京是我的出生地。

Is this the reason why (for which) he refused our offer?

这就是他拒绝我们帮助他的理由吗？

#### (三) 判断关系代词与关系副词

**方法一：**用关系代词，还是关系副词完全取决于从句中的谓语动词。及物动词后面无宾语，就必须要求用关系代词；而不及物动词则要求用关系副词。例如：

This is the mountain village where I stayed last year.

I'll never forget the days when I worked together with you.

判断改错：

( ) This is the mountain village where I visited last year.

( ) I will never forget the days when I spent in the countryside.

( ) This is the mountain village (which/that) I visited last year.

( ) I'll never forget the days (which/that) I spent in the countryside.

**方法二：**准确判断先行词在定语从句中的成分(主、谓、宾、定、状)，也能正确选择出关系代词/关系副词。

例 1. Is this the museum \_\_\_\_ you visited a few days ago?

A. where                      B. that                      C. on which                      D. the one

例 2. Is this the museum \_\_\_\_ the exhibition was held.

A. where                      B. that                      C. on which                      D. the one

例 1. 变为陈述句: This is the museum \_\_\_\_ you visited a few days ago.

例 2. 变为陈述句: This is the museum \_\_\_ the exhibition was held.

#### (四) “介词+关系词”引导的定语从句

1. 介词后面的关系词不能省略。

2. “介词+关系词”引导定语从句时, 若指人, 则用介词+whom; 若指物, 则用介词+which, 如:

My cousin is a person with whom I can discuss my homework.

The West Lake, for which Hangzhou is famous, is a beautiful place.

3. 某些在从句中充当时间、地点或原因状语的“介词+关系词”结构可以同关系副词 when, where, why 互换。

This is the house in which I lived two years ago.

This is the house where I lived two years ago.

Do you remember the day on which you joined our club?

Do you remember the day when you joined our club?

## 二、限制性和非限制性定语从句

1. 定语从句有限制性和非限制性两种。限制性定语从句是先行词不可缺少的部分, 去掉它主句意思往往不明确; 非限制性定语从句是先行词的附加说明, 去掉了也不会影响主句的意思, 它与主句之间通常用逗号分开, 例如:

This is the house which we bought last month.

这是我们上个月买的那幢房子。(限制性)

The house, which we bought last month, is very nice.

这幢房子很漂亮, 是我们上个月买的。(非限制性)

2. 当先行词是专有名词或有物主代词和指示代词所修饰时, 其后的定语从句通常是非限制性的, 例如:

Charles Smith, who was my former teacher, retired last year.

查理·史密斯去年退休了, 他曾经是我的老师。

My house, which I bought last year, has got a lovely garden.

我去年买的那幢房子带着个漂亮的花园。

This novel, which I have read three times, is very touching.

这本小说很动人, 我已经读了三遍。

3. 非限制性定语从句还能将整个主句作为先行词, 对其进行修饰, 这时从句谓语动词要用第三人称单数, 例如:

He seems not to have grasped what I meant, which greatly upsets me.

他似乎没抓住我的意思, 这使我很心烦。

Liquid water changes to vapor, which is called evaporation.

液态水变为蒸汽, 这就叫做蒸发。

【注意】关系代词 that 和关系副词 why 不能引导非限制性定语从句。

## 三、同位语从句与定语从句的区别

1. 同位语从句与前面的名词是同位关系，说明它前面名词的内容属于名词性从句范畴。定语从句与前面的名词是修饰与被修饰关系，限定前面名词的范围，属于形容词性从句范畴。

The news that I have passed the exam is true.

The news that he told me just now is true.

2. 引导同位语从句的 **that** 是连接词，在从句中不充当任何成分，而引导定语从句的 **that** 是关系代词，除了起连接作用外，还在从句中充当主语、宾语或表语等。如：

The idea that computers can recognize human voices surprises many people.

The idea that he gave surprises many people.

#### 四、其他注意要点

##### (一) 先行词和关系词二合一

what = the thing which=all that; whatever = anything that

who= the person that; whoever= anyone who

例如：

What you want has been sent here.

(what 可以用 the thing which 代替)

Whatever you want makes no difference to me.

(whatever 可以用 anything that 代替)

Whoever spits in public will be punished here.

(whoever 可以用 anyone who 代替)

The parents will use what they have to send their son to technical school.

(what 可以用 all that 代替)

判断改错：

( ) Who breaks the law will be punished.

( ) Whoever robbed the bank is not clear.

( ) Whoever breaks the law will be punished.

( ) Who robbed the bank is not clear.

##### (二) 关系代词 **that** 与 **which** 的用法区别

1. 只能用 **which** 的情况：

(1) 在引导非限制性定语从句时。

(错) The tree, that is four hundred years old, is very famous here.

(2) 放在介词后做宾语时。

We depend on the land from which we get our food.

We depend on the land that/which we get our food from.

2. 只能用 **that** 作为定语从句关系代词的情况：

(1) 先行词为 **all, everything, anything, nothing, little, much** 等不定代词时；

(2) 先行词被 **all, any, every, each, much, little, no, some, few** 等修饰时；



## 第四节、 状语从句

状语从句在复合句中作状语。根据句子的含义，它可表示时间、地点、原因、目的、结果、条件、行为方式、比较、让步等。

状语从句一般由连词（从属连词）引导，也可以由词组引起。从句位于句首或句中时通常用逗号与主句隔开，位于句尾时可以不用逗号隔开。

状语从句的构成：

引导词+状语从句+“，”+主句：When she came in,I stopped eating.

主句+引导词+状语从句：We were about to leave when he came in.

状语从句的关键是掌握不同状语从句的常用连接词和一些特殊的连接词。

★ 要点提示：

- ◇ 状语从句的分类及其连接词
- ◇ 比较 while, when, as
- ◇ 比较 until 和 till
- ◇ 表示“一……就……”的结构

【知识点拨】

状语从句分类及其连接词一览表

引导时间状语	when, whenever, while, as, before, after, until, till, by the time, hardly...when, as soon as, no sooner...than, the moment, the minute, immediately, directly, instantly
引导地点状语	where, wherever
引导原因状语	because, as, since, now that, in that
引导条件状语	if, unless, once, in case, as long as, on condition that
引导结果状语	so...that, such...that
引导目的状语	so that, in order that, for fear that, lest
引导比较状语	than, as...as, not so/ as...as, the more... the more
引导方式状语	as if, as though, as
引导让步状语	though, although, even if, even though, as, whether, no matter what, whatever, no matter who, whoever, no matter which, whichever, no matter how, however, no matter w

### (一)时间状语从句

在复合句中，由时间连接词引导的状语从句叫做时间状语从句。通常由以下连词引导：when, while, as, once, after, before, as soon as, since, till/until, by the time.

(1) when (在……的时候)

Mozart started writing music when he was four.

莫扎特 4 岁的时候，开始写音乐作品。

(2) while (在……期间)

He visited a lot of places while he was traveling

他在旅途中参观了许多地方。

(3) as (正当/随着)

He smiled as he stood up.

(4) after (在.....之后)

He left the classroom after he had finished his homework the other day .

前几天他做完作业之后回的家。

(5) before (在...之前)

Mr.Brown had worked in a bank for a year before he came here.

布朗先生来这之前已经在一家银行里工作一年了。

(6) as soon as (一.....就.....)

We began to work as soon as we got there.我们一到那就开始工作。

(7) since (自从.....以来, 到现在)

表示自过去的一个起点时间到目前(说话时间)为止的一段持续时间。主句一般用现在完成时,从句用一般过去时。

Mr.Green has taught in that school since he came to China three years ago.

布朗先生来这之前已经在一家银行里工作一年了。

(8) till/until (直到.....时)

They walked till/until it was dark.他们一直走到天黑。

Xiao Ming didn't leave home till/until his father came back.小明直到他爸爸回来才离开家。

(9) by the time (到.....为止) 所在句子的主句应用完成时。

By the time I go to school,the class had already began.我到校时, 已经开始上课了。

### 【注意】

#### 1. when, while, as 的区别

①when 引导的从句谓语动词可以是延续性动词,也可以是短暂性动词,通常表示“当.....时候”。

When the teacher came in, we stop talking.当老师进来时,我们都不说话了。(短暂性动词)

When I lived in the countryside, I used to live a tough live.当我住在农村时,我过着艰苦的生活。(延续性动词)

②while 引导的从句的谓语动词必须是延续性的动词,多用于进行时态,表示“在...时”,强调时间段的持续性,也可强调主从句的对比。

While my mother was reading the newspaper, I was watching TV.

当我妈妈在看报纸的时,我正在看电视。(延续性动词,同时发生)

I like playing football while you like playing basketball.

我喜欢踢足球,而你喜欢打篮球。(对比)

③as 引导从句的谓语动词是延续性的动词,表示“一边.....一边”,一般用于主句和从句动作同时发生;as也可以表示“随着...”。

We always sing as we walk.我们总是边走边唱。(as表示“一边.....一边”)

As families moved away from their stable community,the informal flow of information is cut off.随着家庭离开他们稳定的社区,这种非正式的信息流就被切断了。(as表示“随着.....”)

④when 引导时间状语从句的特殊用法:

When 引导时间状语从句,如果从句和主句主语一致,并且从句的谓语中有 be 动词,此时从句的

主语和 be 动词可以一起省略。

When I was a little girl, I loved Jeff so much.

省略后是: When a little girl, I loved Jeff so much.

## 2、比较 until 和 till

Till 和 until 一般情况下两者可以互换,但是在强调句里多用 until。并且要注意的是:如果主句中的谓语动词是瞬时动词时,必须用否定形式;如果主句中的谓语动词是延续性动词时,用肯定或否定形式都可以,但表达的意思不同。

### ① 肯定句:

I slept until midnight. 我一直睡到半夜时醒了。

Wait till I call you. 等着我叫你。

(在肯定句中可用 before 代替: Let's get in the wheat before the sun sets.)

### ② 否定句:

She didn't arrive until 6 o'clock. 她直到 6 点才到。

Don't get off the bus until it has stopped. 公共汽车停稳后再下车。

I didn't manage to do it until you had explained how. 直到你教我后,我才会做。

注:否定句可用另外两种句式表示。

(1) Not until...在句首,主句用倒装。

Not until the early years of the 19th century did man know what heat is.

直到 19 世纪初,人类才知道热能是什么。

Not until I began to work did I realize how much time I had wasted.

直到我开始工作,我才认识到了我已蹉跎了几多岁月。

(2) It is not until... that...

It was not until yesterday that I noticed it.

直到昨晚我才注意到此事。

## 3、表示“一.....就.....”的结构

hardly/scarcely...when/before, no sooner...than 和 as soon as 都可以表示“一.....就.....”的意思,例如:

I had hardly / scarcely got home when it began to rain.

I had no sooner got home than it began to rain.

As soon as I got home, it began to rain.

如果 hardly, scarcely 或 no sooner 置于句首,句子必须用倒装结构。主句用过去完成时,从句用一般过去时。

Hardly / Scarcely had I got home when it began to rain.

No sooner had I got home than it began to rain.

### (二) 地点状语从句

一般由连接副词 where, wherever 等引导的状语从句是地点状语从句,有以下两种常用句型。

句型 1: where+地点从句, (there) +主句,此句型通常译成“哪里...哪里就...”;主句在从句后面时,there 可用可不用;反之,一般都不用 there。

Where there is no rain, farming is difficult or impossible. 在没有雨水的地方,耕作是困难的,或根本

不可能的。

You should have put the book where you found it.你本来应该把书放回原来的地方。

句型 2: Anywhere+Wherever+地点从句, +主句。

Wherever you go, I go too.无论你到什么地方, 我都跟你去。

### (三) 条件状语从句

条件状语从句由连词 if, unless (=if not), as long as, only if, in case that 等引导。注意在条件状语从句中时态的正确使用, 当主句是将来时的时候, 从句要用一般现在时表示将来。

If it doesn't rain tomorrow, we will go hiking.如果明天不下雨, 我们就去徒步旅行。

You will be late unless you leave immediately.如果你不马上走, 你会迟到的。

### (四) 原因状语从句

原因状语从句由连词 because, since, as, in that 等引导。

I didn't go to school yesterday because I was ill.我昨天没去上学, 因为我生病了。

Since everybody is here, let's begin our meeting.既然大家都来了, 让我们开始开会吧。

As you are in poor health, you should not stay up late.既然你身体不好, 你就不该熬夜。

需要注意的是有一些介词短语, 也翻译成“因为”, 但它们后面只能跟名词(短语), 不能跟从句:

because of, due to, owing to, thanks to, as a result of 等。

连词	区别	例句
because	表示原因的语气最强, 常表示必然的因果关系, 从句一般放在主句后面; 另外, 回答 why 的问句只能用 because。	He is not at school today, because he is seriously ill.
as	表示一般的因果关系, 语气比 because 弱, 说明比较明显的原因, 它引导的从句可以放在句首也可以放在句尾。	As all of you have got here, now, let's go to the zoo.
since	since (既然)表示对方已经知道、无需加以说明的原因或事实。	I will ask Lin Tao to go with me since you are very busy.
for	for (因为)是并列连词, 语气较弱, 用来补充说明理由或提供一种解释。	We must be off now for the match starts at 7:00.

### (五) 目的状语从句

目的状语从句由连词 so that, in order that 等引导。

I'll run slowly so that you can catch up with me. 我会慢慢跑以使你赶上我。

I opened the window so that fresh air might come in. 我把窗户打开以使新鲜空气进来。

We shall let you know the details soon in order that you can make your arrangements. 不久我们将会让你知道详情, 以便你们能够做出安排。

常见的动词不定式也可以表示目的: to, in order to, so as to 等, 后跟动词原形。

### (六) 结果状语从句

结果状语从句由连词 so that, so ... that, such ... that 等引导。

1. so that 既可以引导目的状语从句, 也可以引导结果状语从句。引导目的状语从句时, 会跟情态动词一起连用; 引导结果状语从句时, 则不和情态动词连用。

We moved to the country so that we were away from the noisy city.

我们搬去郊外，这样便远离了喧闹的城市。

## 2. so ... that 的用法

### 1) so+形容词/副词+that

The movie was so boring that I gave up watching it halfway through.

这部电影太乏味了，以至于我看到一半就不想看了。

### 2) so+many/much/few/little+名词+that

He got so little money that his family had to live on welfare.

他挣钱很少，以至于他的家人不得不靠救济金生活。

### 3) so+形容词+a/an+可数名词单数+that

She is so nice a teacher that everyone loves and respects her.

她是如此好的一个老师，以至于每个人都敬爱她。

## ③such...that 的用法

### 1) such+a/an+形容词+可数名词单数+that

It was such a terrible show that none of us would pay for watching it again.

这场演出太糟糕了，以至于我们都不会再花钱去看了。

### 2) such+形容词+可数名词复数/不可数名词+that

They are such adorable babies that we all love them.

这些婴儿都很可爱，我们都很喜欢他们。

This was such wonderful music that it deserved replaying.

这种音乐很好听，值得单曲循环。

## (七) 让步状语从句

表示让步的状语从句由 although, though, even if, even though, as, no matter..., whatever, whoever, wherever, however, whichever 等引导。

Although we have grown up, our parents still treat us as child.

尽管我们已经长大了，可是我们的父母仍把我们看作小孩。

Even though I fail, I'll keep on trying.

纵然失败，我仍会继续尝试下去。

### 【注意】though, although 的区别

连	区别	例句
though	1. 可以与 even 连用(=even if), 表示“即使、纵然”。 2. 作副词时意思是“然而、不过”，不能放在句首， 可以放在句末，用“，”隔开。	She won't leave the TV set, even though her husband is waiting for her for the supper. It was a quiet party. I had a good time,though. (这是个不热闹的聚会，尽管如此我还是玩得很开心。)
although	“尽管、虽然”仅作连词，比较正式，不能放在句末。	He passed the exams although illness prevented him from going to classes.

## (八) 比较状语从句

比较状语从句由连词 *as, than, the more ... the more ..., more ... than* 等引导, 主要运用于形容词和副词的原级、比较级及最高级的句子中。

### ①原级

1) *as ... as* 和.....一样

Jack is as tall as Bob. 杰克和汤姆一样高。

2) *not so(as) ... as* 和.....不一样

She is not so(as) outgoing as her sister. 她不如她姐姐外向。

### ②比较级

1) *the more... the more...* , 越....., 越.....

The harder one works, the luckier he will feel. 越努力越幸运。

2) *more ... than*, 更.....

This book is more instructive than that one. 这本书比那本书更有教育意义。

### ③最高级

1) *The most...in/of*

This book is the most interesting of the three. 这本书是三本书中最有趣的。

2) *The+形容词最高级...of/in*

This road is the busiest in our city. 这条路是我们城市最繁忙的街道。

## (九) 方式状语从句

方式状语从句由 *as, as if, as though* 等连词引导。

①*as, (just)as ... so ...* 引导的方式状语从句通常位于主句后, 但在 *(just)as ... so ...* 结构中位于句首, 这时从句带有比喻的含义, 意思是“正如.....”, “就像”, 多用于正式文体, 例如:

Always do to the others as you would be done by. 你希望人家怎样待你, 你就要怎样待人。

As water is to fish,so air is to man. 我们离不开空气, 犹如鱼儿离不开水。

②*as if, as though* 两者的意义和用法相同, 引出的状语从句谓语多用虚拟语气, 表示与事实相反, 有时也用陈述语气, 表示所说情况是事实或实现的可能性较大。常译作“仿佛.....似的”, “好像.....似的”。例如:

They completely ignore these facts as if (as though) they never existed.

他们完全忽略了这些事实, 就仿佛它不存在似的。(与事实相反, 谓语用虚拟语气)

He looks as if(as though) he had been hit by lightning.

他那样子就像被雷击了似的。(与事实相反, 谓语用虚拟语气)

It looks as if the weather may pick up very soon.

看来天气很快就会好起来。(实现的可能性较大, 谓语用陈述语气)

## 第五节、 虚拟语气

★ 要点提示:

- if 引导的非真实条件句及倒装
- 名词性从句中的虚拟语气
- 状语从句引导的虚拟语气
- 其他句型中的虚拟语气

【知识点拨】

### 1. 概念

虚拟语气用来表示说话人的主观愿望或假想，所说的是一个条件，不一定是事实，或与事实相反。

### 2. 在条件句中的应用

条件句可分为两类，一类为真实条件句，一类为非真实条件句。

- 真实条件句用于陈述语气，假设的情况可能发生，其中 if 是“如果”的意思。

**时态关系:**

句型: 条件从句+主句

一般现在时+shall/will + 动词原形 (主将从现)

If he comes, he will bring his violin.

### 典型例题 1

The volleyball match will be put off if it \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. will rain      B. rains      C. rained      D. is rained

非真实条件句表示的是假设的或实际可能性不大的情况，故采用虚拟语气。

	if 从句	主句
与现在事实相反	动词的过去式 (系动词 be 用 were 表示)	would (should/ could/ might) + 动词原形
与过去事实相反	动词的过去完成式	would (should, could, might) + have + 动词的过去分词
与将来时间相反	1. 动词的过去式 (be 为 were) 2. were+不定式 3. should+动词原形	would (should, could, might) + 动词原形

例如:

If I had time, I would go to the movies with you. (与现在事实相反)

If I were you, I should do it. (与现在事实相反)

If we hadn't made adequate preparations, the conference wouldn't have been so successful. (与过去事实相反)

如果我们没有做充分准备的话，会议不可能如此成功

If I were to be twenty years old next year, I would buy this coat. (与将来时间相反)

明年我要是二十岁，我就会买这件衣服。

If most youngsters failed to be confident, the whole society would pay a heavy price. (与将来时间相反)  
如果大多数年轻人没有自信的话, 我们的社会将会付出惨重的代价。

**【注意】**

1. 错综时间条件句

在非真实条件句中, 有时从句的动词所表示的动作和主句的动词所表示的动作并不同时发生, 这样的条件句中使用的虚拟式称为混合虚拟式或称为错综时间条件句。此时, 动词的形式要根据表示的时间来调整, 而且一般有明确的时间状语: 如 *now, then, tomorrow* 等提示。

If I had taken my raincoat when I came out this morning, I would not be wet now.

(从句虚拟过去, 主句虚拟现在)

如果今晚我出去的时候带了雨衣的话, 我现在就不会被淋湿。

If I were you, I wouldn't have missed the film last night.

(从句虚拟现在, 主句虚拟过去)

如果我是你, 我不会错过昨天晚上的电影。

If Tom intended to start out this morning, he would have got everything ready last night. (从句虚拟将来, 主句虚拟过去)

如果汤姆今天打算出发的话, 他昨天就会收拾好行李。

If he had taken my advice, he would be a scientist now.

(从句虚拟过去, 主句虚拟现在)

2. 虚拟语气的省略与倒装

当 *if* 引导的虚拟条件从句中含有 *had, were, should* 等时, 如将 *if* 省略, 则要将 *had, were, should* 等移到主语前, 构成倒装句 (如果句中不含 *were, had* 或 *should* 时, 既不能省略 *if*, 也不能倒装):

Were I you (=If I were you), I wouldn't feel sorry. 要是我是你的话, 我不会感到抱歉。

Had we made (=If we had made) adequate preparations, we might have succeeded.

要是准备充分, 我们本来是有可能成功的。

Were I (=If I were) to do the work, I should do it some other way.

要是我做这项工作, 我就用另外的办法。

Should it rain(=If it should rain), the crops would be saved.

要是能下雨的话, 这些庄稼就能有救了。

典型例题 2

\_\_\_\_\_ to do the work, I should do it some other day.

- A. If were I      B. I were      C. Were I      D. Was I

(二) 名词性从句中的虚拟语气

1. 主语从句中的虚拟语气

主语从句中一般可以用虚拟语气来表示建议、命令、要求、惊讶或失望等感情色彩。主语从句中的虚拟语气重点考查的是以下三种句型。

(1) “It is +形容词+that”的主语从句。

此句型中的形容词用来表示愿望、建议、命令等意义, 其谓语部分用 (should)+动词原形。

possible 可能的	urgent 紧迫的	desirable 想要的
--------------	------------	---------------

important 重要的	necessary 必要的	essential 必要的
advisable 适当的	appropriate 恰当的	probable 可能的
vital 非常重要的	keen 渴望的	incredible 惊人的

It's necessary that we (should) start to do the work right away.

It's urgent that we (should) send for a doctor at once

(2) “It is +过去分词+that”的主语从句。

此句型中的过去分词表示愿望、建议、命令、请求等主观意向，其谓语部分用 (should) +动词原形。

这类过去分词有：

表建议的：proposed, advised, suggested, recommended

表要求的：requested, required, demanded, urged

表愿望的：desired, decided, insisted

表命令的：ordered, commanded

It is requested that Professor Liu (should) give us a lecture.

我们要求刘教授给我们做一个报告。

It is desired that we (should) get everything (should) be put of

希望今晚我们能一切准备就绪。

(3) “It is a+名词+that”的主语从句。

在此类句型中，常用虚拟语气表示命令、建议、请求、道歉、怀疑、惊奇等，其谓语部分应用 should+动词原形，这时 should 不可省。例如：

It is a pity that he should be so careless. 真遗憾他竟会如此粗心大意。

It's strange that she should have failed the exam. 真奇怪，这次考试她竟会不及格。

It is quite natural that such problems should arise. 出现此类问题是很自然的。

## 2. 宾语从句中的虚拟语气

(1) suggest, require, order, etc. +宾语从句。

在一些表示建议、愿望、要求、请求、劝告、意志、欲望、命令、安排、决定等的动词的宾语从句中，要用虚拟语气。

这类动词有：request 请求，vote 建议，propose 提议，move 提议，decide 决定，advise 劝告，order 命令，ask 要求，demand 要求，maintain 坚持，require 要求，insist 坚持，urge 极力主张，desire 渴望，object 反对，prefer 宁愿，recommend 推荐，plead 恳求，suggest 建议，command 命令等。虚拟语气从句谓语动词形式：(should) + 动词原形。总结归纳常考的考点有：

- ① insist (一个坚持)
- ② order/command (两条命令)
- ③ advise/suggest/recommend (三点建议)
- ④ ask/demand/require/request (四项要求)

例如：

She demanded (that) the paper (should) be rewritten.

I suggest (that) he (should) get there as soon as possible.

He insisted (that) our laboratory reports (should) be handed in the day after the experiment was done.

他坚持要求我们在做完实验后第二天将实验报告交上来。

### 【注意】

上句中 insist 意为“坚持要求”。如果 insist 意为“坚持认为”解，则不需用虚拟。

He insisted that he was right. 他坚持认为他是对的。

### 3.表语从句、同位语从句中虚拟语气

在 suggestion, proposal, idea, plan, order, advice 等名词后面的表语从句、同位语从句中要用虚拟语气，即 (should) + 动词原形。

例如：

#### (1) 表语从句

My idea is that we (should) get more people to attend the conference.

#### (2) 同位语从句

I make a proposal that we (should) hold a meeting next week.

#### (三) 状语从句中的虚拟语气

由 lest (以防), in case (以防), for fear that (惟恐) 引导目的状语从句，从句谓语多用 should+ 动词原形构成。

I'll keep a seat for you in case you (should) change your mind.

我给你留了一个座位，说不定你会改变主意。

She put the coat over her son for fear that (或 lest) he should catch cold.

她把大衣盖在儿子身上怕他着凉。

#### (四) 其他句型中的虚拟

##### 1. It is (high) time that 的虚拟

It is (high) time that 后面的从句谓语动词要用过去式或用 should 加动词原形，表示“该做而未做的事”，should 不可省略。

It is time that the children went/should go to bed.

##### 2. 含蓄条件句中的虚拟语气

含蓄虚拟条件句是指将条件隐藏在上下文一定的短语中的一类条件句。在多数情况下，条件会暗含在短语中，如 without..., but for...(要不是因为...), thanks to(多亏), otherwise (否则), or else (否则)

等。如：

Without the sun, no life could live on earth. 如果没有太阳，地球上任何生物便不能生活。

But for the air, we would soon die. 要不是因为有空气，我们便会很快死去。

Thanks to the man's timely rescue, the child would have been drowned.

多亏了那个人的及时营救，不然这个孩子会被淹死的。

I was ill that day; otherwise I would have attended the meeting.

那天我病了，否则我会参加会议的。

##### 3. if only/as if (though)/wish 结构中的虚拟语气

If only/as if(though)/wish 引起的从句用虚拟语气。其虚拟形式为：

	从句	意义
--	----	----

与现在事实相反	did (系动词 were)	用过去时表示与现在相反
与过去事实相反	had done	用过去完成时表示与过去相反
与将来事实相反	would/could/ might do.	表示与愿望相反

If only I knew Japanese! 我要是懂日语多好啊! (指现在)

If only the letter had arrived in time! 信要是及时到了就好了! (指过去)

If only I could see him again! 我要是能再见他一面就好了! (指将来)

She looks as if she knew all about it. (指现在) 她看起来好像全知道似的。

I remember the whole thing as if it happened yesterday.

这件事我记忆犹新, 就像是昨天发生的事似的。(指现在)

They talked as if they had been friends for years.

他们说话很亲热, 就像多年老朋友似的。(指过去)

I wish I knew everything in the world. (指现在)

I wish that you had called yesterday. (指过去)

I wish that he could try again. (指将来)

I would rather you went home now. (与现在事实相反)

Don't come tomorrow, I'd rather you came next week. (与将来事实相反)

I'd rather you hadn't done that. (与过去事实相反)

## 第六节、倒装

★ 要点提示:

- ◇ 倒装句的分类
- ◇ 完全倒装的条件和方式
- ◇ 部分倒装的条件和方式

### 【知识点拨】

谓语的全部或部分（助动词或情态动词）放在主语之前的现象称为倒装。

全部倒装是指将句子中的谓语动词全部置于主语之前。此结构通常只用于一般现在时和一般过去时。

部分倒装是指将谓语的一部分如助动词或情态动词倒装至主语之前。如果句中的谓语没有助动词或情态动词，则需添加助动词 do, does 或 did, 并将其置于主语之前。

### 一、倒装种类

	倒装条件	例句
全 倒 装	<p>(表示地点和运动方向的副词) here, there, up, down, in, out, off, away 等副词开头的句子, 需用完全倒装。 (表示时间的副词) now, then 等副词开头的句 子, 谓语动词为 come, go, be, follow 等时, 需用完 全倒装。 注意: 如果主语是代词, 即使该类词置于句首, 依然 用正常语序。</p>	<p>Out rushed the children. In came the teacher and the lesson began. Now comes your turn.</p>
	表示地点的介词短语作状语位于句首, 起强调作	Under the tree stood two tables and four
	强调表语, 置于句首, 或为保持句子平衡	Present at the meeting were 1,000 students
分 倒 装	<p>never, hardly, scarcely, seldom, little, not until, no , in no case, by no means, on no account 等表示否定意义的副 词 或介词短语放于句首。 注意: 当 not until 引导的是从句时, until 从句 的主谓不可倒装, 只是主句需要倒装。 eg: Not until he returned did we have supper.</p>	<p>Hardly did I know what had happened. Not until 7 o'clock did he go to school. In no case should we abandon her.</p>
	only 和修饰的状语放于句首	<p>Only then did he realize the importance of English. Only in this way can you solve this probl</p>
	not only...but also 连接并列的句子, 前倒后不倒	<p>Not only does he know French, but also he is expert at it.</p>
	neither...nor...连接并列的句子, 前后都倒装	<p>Neither do I know it, nor do I care about it.</p>

so...that, such...that 中的 so 或 such 及修饰的成分放于句首 时, 前倒后不倒	So busy is he that he cannot go on a holiday. Such a good boy is he that everyone likes him.
as 引导的让步状语, 把需要强调的部分提前 (如名词、动词、形容词、副词), 然后再加陈述句的其他部分。 <small>注意: 名词单数省去冠词</small>	Child as he is, he has learned a lot.
so, neither 或 nor 表示前句内容也适用于另外的人或事	He can play the piano. So can I.
用于表示祝愿的祈使句中	May you be in good health!
省略 if 的虚拟条件	Were I you, I would not do it in this way.

## 二、注意要点提示

“so / nor / neither +助动词/情态动词/系动词+主语”与“so / nor / neither +主语+助动词/情态动词/系动词”

①“so / nor / neither +助动词/情态动词/系动词+主语”表示前面说过的情况也适用于另一个人或物时, 要部分倒装。例如:

Peter can't answer the question. Neither can I.

②“so / nor / neither +主语+助动词/情态动词/系动词”表示“确实.....”, 仅是对前面内容的肯定或附和。例如:

— The lights are still on in the classroom. You must have forgotten to turn them off.

— So I did. (我确实忘记关了。)

## 第七节、 强调句

★ 要点提示:

◇ 强调句的类型

◇ 强调句型的判断方法

【知识点拨】

### 一、 强调句的类型

#### 1. 用 **It is/was...that/who...** 句型表示强调

被强调的部分（通常是句子的主语、状语、宾语或宾语补足语）放在 **is/was** 的后面，如被强调的是人，则 **that** 可用 **who, whom** 代替。若原句的谓语动词用了现在时或将来时，强调句型中则用 **is**；若原句的谓语动词用了过去时或过去完成时，则用 **was**。

He met an old friend in the park yesterday.

It was an old friend that/who he met in the park yesterday.

It was in the park that he met an old friend yesterday.

【注意】

(1) 强调句的一般疑问句形式:

Is/Was it + 被强调部分 + that/who + 其他成分?

Was it in 1939 that the Second World War broke out?

(2) 强调句的特殊疑问句形式:

特殊疑问词 + is/was + it + that + 其他成分?

例如: Jim met his good friend last night on the street. 对这句话变换:

强调 Jim 的: Who was it that met his good friend last night on the street?

强调 friend 的: Whom was it that Jim met last night on the street?

强调 last night 的: When was it that Jim met his good friend on the street?

强调 on the street 的: Where was it that Jim met his good friend last night?

#### 2. 从句的强调

(1) 强调状语从句

I came home late because it rained heavily.

It was because it rained heavily that I came home late.

**难点:** not ... until ... 句型的强调句, not until 不能分开。

句型为: It is/was not until + 被强调部分 + that + 其他部分。如:

He didn't go to bed until/till his wife came back. (普通句)

It was not until his wife came back that he went to bed. (强调句)

【注意】

①此句型只用 **until**, 不用 **till**。但如果不是强调句型, **till** 和 **until** 可通用。

②句型中 It is/was not...已经是否定句了, that 后面的从句要用肯定句, 切勿再用否定句了。

(2) 强调主语从句

What you said really made us sad. (普通句)

It was what you said that really made us sad. (强调句)

### 3. 谓语动词的强调

It is/was ... that ...结构不能强调谓语, 如果需要强调谓语时, 用助动词 do/ does 或 did。

Do sit down. 请坐。

He did write to you last week. 上周他确实给你写了信。

Do be careful when you cross the street. 过马路时, 务必要小心啊!

#### 【注意】

此种强调只用 do/ does 和 did, 没有别的形式; 过去时用 did, 后面的谓语动词用原形。

## 二、强调句型的判断

把“It, be, that”去掉, 如果剩余部分句子结构仍然完整(被强调部分要还原到原位置), 那么这个句子就是强调句; 如果句子不完整, 则不是强调句。如:

- (1) It is he who/that often helps me with my English.
- (2) It is on the hillside that we plant trees every year.
- (3) It was because of bad weather that the football match had to be put off.
- (4) It was 9 o'clock when we came back.
- (5) It was 3 hours since we had come back.

#### 【注意】

(1) 句首词用 It, 不能用 This, That 等。

It is Mary who often helps me with my English.

(2) be 动词的形式是 is, 或 was, 不能用复数 are 或 were。

It is these exercises that all of us can do tomorrow.

(3) 被强调的部分如果是代词, 强调主语用主格, 强调宾语用宾格。如:

It was him that/who/whom I met in the street yesterday.

It was I who/that made that decision.

(4) 连接词一般用 that, 当强调部分是人时, 既可用 that 也可用 who。特别注意当强调部分是时间状语或地点状语时, 不能用 when 或 where。如:

It was on Oct 1st, 1949 that People's Republic of China was founded.

(5) 主谓一致问题, 被强调的主语要和 that 后面的谓语动词在数上保持一致。

It is I that/who am going to Beijing.

# 模拟测试

## 2020 届湖北省普通专升本英语模拟试卷（一）

### Part I Vocabulary & Structure

Directions: This part is to test your ability to use words and phrases correctly to construct meaningful and grammatically correct sentences.

#### Section A

Directions: There are 20 incomplete statements here. You are required to complete each statement by choosing the appropriate answer from the 4 choices marked A, B, C and D. You should mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet with a single line through the center:

1. How much does it \_\_\_\_\_ to take the online training course?

- A. cost B. give C. pay D. spend

2. If you move, you must inform us \_\_\_\_\_ the change of your address.

- A. with B. for C. in D. of

3. \_\_\_\_\_ his lecture is short, it gives us a clear picture of the new program.

- A. if B. because C. although D. When

4. The company has been producing this model of machine tool \_\_\_\_\_ 2008

- A. since B. after C. for D. in

5. To \_\_\_\_\_ the truth, I really didn't know anything about yesterday's meeting.

- A. do B. tell C. put D. take

6. Your sales methods will depend \_\_\_\_\_ the customers with whom you deal.

- A. with B. on C. in D. for

7. Our company's service is \_\_\_\_\_ in nearly 80 countries around the world.

- A. available B. natural C. relative

8. We will have to pay them a large \_\_\_\_\_ of money for their service

- A. size B. set C. amount D. series

9. Our company's service is \_\_\_\_\_ in nearly 80 countries

- A. available B. natural C. relative D. careful

10. You can ask these experts advice

- A. on B. over C. from D. for

11. \_\_\_\_\_ his sister, Jack is talkative and easily makes friends with others.

- A. Dislike B. Unlike C. Liking D. Alike

12. A completely new situation will \_\_\_\_\_ when the examination system comes into existence.

- A. arise B. rise C. raise D. arouse

13. A couple of suspicious-looking \_\_\_\_\_ were standing outside the house.

- A. personalities B. characters C. persons D. temperatures

14. A(n) \_\_\_\_\_ vehicle is one which has been left unwanted and discarded by its owner or by others.

- A. deserted B. quit C. abandoned D. left

15. Deserts and high mountains have always been a \_\_\_\_\_ to the movement of people from place to place.

- A. jam B. barrier C. fence D. prevention

16. Nobody but Jane \_\_\_\_\_ the secret.  
 A. know B. knows C. have known D. is known
17. The singer and the dancer \_\_\_\_\_ come to the meeting.  
 A. has B. have C. are D. is
18. Mathematics \_\_\_\_\_ the language of science.  
 A. is B. has been C. are D. have been
19. The police \_\_\_\_\_ soon.  
 A. is coming B. are coming C. has come D. have come
20. A series of problems \_\_\_\_\_ cropped up recently.  
 A. have B. has C. is D. are

## Part II Reading Comprehension

**Directions:** This part is to test your reading ability. There are 4 tasks for you to fulfill. You should read the reading materials carefully and do the tasks as you are instructed.

### Task1

**Directions:** After reading the following passage, you will find 5 questions or unfinished statements, numbered 21 to 25. For each question or statement there are 4 choices marked A, B, C and D. You should make the correct choice and mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet with a single line through the center.

If you have an AT&T Business Direct account, you can have your telephone bill paid automatically each month. You can make payments online with a bank account or use one of the following credit cards (信用卡): Visa, Master Card, Discover Network or American Express. When you make an online payment, please follow the instructions given below.

#### Instructions

- To make your payment online, click (点击) the "pay Now" link under the "Account Overview(概览)" summary.
- If your business has more than one registered account, first select the account you need from the "Account Number" menu, and then click the "Pay now" link.
- If you have never made an online payment before, you will be asked whether you want to make a payment by using a bank account or credit card. Select either "Bank Account" or "Credit Card" from the "Select Payment Method" menu.

The online payment system is available Monday through Saturday, from 7:00 AM to 12:00 AM (Midnight) Eastern Time.

21. An AT&T Business Direct account helps you \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. earn an interest from a bank account  
 B. make the first month's payment only  
 C. pay your telephone bill automatically  
 D. enjoy all the available banking services
22. The payment with an AT&T Business Direct account can be made online with \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. a passport  
 B. a credit card  
 C. a driving license  
 D. a traveler's check
23. If you have several registered accounts for payment, the first link that you should click is \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. "Select Payment Method" menu  
 B. "Account Overview" summary  
 C. The "Account Number" menu  
 D. the "Pay Now" link
24. When making the first-time online payment you will be asked to \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. register your online account number
  - B. open several registered account
  - C. select the payment method first
  - D. apply for a new credit card
25. The passage is mainly about \_\_\_\_\_
- A. how to pay phone bills by AT&T Business Direct
  - B. how to open an AT&T Business Direct account
  - C. how to make use of online bank services
  - D. how to start a small online business

### Task2

**Directions:** After reading the following passage, you will find 5 questions or unfinished statements, numbered 26 to 30. For each question or statement there are 4 choices marked A, B, C and D. You should make the correct choice and mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet with a single line through the center:

A car is made up of more than 30,000 parts each part in a new car is as weak as a baby. So a new car requires proper care and servicing. If you're unfamiliar with the parts, you have to read through the owner's instructions carefully.

First of all, the brakes(刹车) of your car are important for safety (安全) reasons. Having them checked regularly can reduce the risks of accidents. Another important thing to consider is engine care. Always remember that the life and performance of your car engine depend on the engine oil. Replace the engine oil when recommended. If you feel the engine is very hot especially during summer, it is probably because the cooling system doesn't work well. You'd better get the cooling system serviced before the start of summer.

In a word, timely and proper servicing is an important task for car owners. Good servicing can not only extend the life of your newborn baby, but also ensure your safety, and the safety of those who share the road with you.

26. To get familiar with the parts of a new car, the owner should \_.
- A. regard the car as a new-born baby
  - B. have the car serviced before driving it
  - C. read through the instructions carefully
  - D. examine all of the parts of the new car
27. The brakes should be checked regularly \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. to avoid accidents
  - B. to raise speed
  - C. to reduce cost
  - D. to save gas
28. For a car engine to work long and well, the owner should \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. replace the engine oil as recommended
  - B. reduce the use of the car in summer
  - C. clean engine parts regularly
  - D. change the brakes frequently
29. It is recommended to have the cooling system checked when \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. you buy a new car
  - B. summer is coming
  - C. the engine oil is replaced
  - D. the brakes are out of order
30. The last paragraph tells us that the purpose of carefully servicing a car is \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. to let you sell your car at a good price
  - B. to extend its life and ensure safety

- C. to reduce the cost of car servicing
- D. to make the car run faster

### Task3

**Directions:** Read the following passage. After reading it, you should complete the information by filling in the blanks marked 31 to 35 (in no more than 3 words) in the table below.

If you are staying in the UK for more than 6 months, it may be useful to open a UK bank account. There are a lot of advantages of having a UK current (checking) account:

#### Paying bills

Many landlords prefer to collect rent directly from a bank account.

You may be able to obtain cheaper services if you pay bills directly from a bank account, e.g. telephone/ gas/ water/electricity.

If you are given a chequebook, you can also write cheques as a safe way of paying for things.

#### Cash

You can easily obtain money from cash machines, or pay directly from your account using a debit card (借记卡).

#### Saving money

It is generally cheaper to use a UK account than it is to pay by credit card (信用卡) or withdraw (提取) cash from a foreign bank.

#### Employment

If you work in the UK, some employers require you to have a bank account so that you can get your pay.

Advantages of UK Current Account

Paying bills: 1) to pay rent directly from 31 \_\_\_\_\_

2) to obtain 32 \_\_\_\_\_ services

3) to pay for things with cheques Safely

Cash: 1) to obtain money from 33 \_\_\_\_\_ easily

2) to pay directly from your account

Saving money: cheaper to use a 34 \_\_\_\_\_ account

Employment: to get your 35 \_\_\_\_\_ through a bank account

### Task4

**Directions:** Read the following passage. After reading them, you are required complete the answers that follow the questions (No.36 to No.40). you should write your answers (in no more than 3 words) on the Answer Sheet correspondingly.

Make your payroll (工资表) faster and easier with our Easy Online Payroll!

If you're spending more time than 10 minutes a week or over \$30 a month on making a payroll, then you need to use the software Easy Online Payroll. It helps you organize your accounting process, so you can save money and spend more time actually running your business. The main benefits you will get from Easy Online Payroll include:

—Enter your payroll anytime, anywhere

—Pay all your employees by direct deposit. (直接存款) to their checking accounts with Bank of America and receive a \$15 monthly discount (折扣)

—Printing of paychecks from the company's computer

—Free telephone and email support.

Put us to work for you to make your work simpler. Take advantage of the best value for small businesses with employees. To speak to the Banking Center, call 1-888-6000-40000 or visit [www.bankofamerica.com](http://www.bankofamerica.com)

36. What can Easy Online Payroll do for making a payroll?

It can help to make a payroll \_\_\_\_\_.

37. What is one of the advantages of Easy Online Payroll?

It can help to organize your process .

38. How can a company pay their employees with Easy Online Payroll?

By direct deposit to their \_\_\_\_\_ with Bank of America.

39. Where can the paychecks be printed?

From the company's \_\_\_\_\_.

40. How can you contact the Banking Center?

Can I -888-6000-40000 or \_\_\_\_\_.

### Part III Translation English into Chinese

**Directions:** This part, numbered 41 to 45, is to test your ability to translate English into Chinese. Each of the four sentences (No.41 to No.44) is followed by four choices of suggested translation marked A, B, C, and D. Make the best choice and write the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet. Write your translation of the paragraph (No.45) in the corresponding space on the Translation/ Composition Sheet.

41. If anything should go wrong with your computer, refer all servicing to qualified service personnel.

- A. 如果你不会使用这台计算机，务必向专业人士进行咨询。
- B. 如果这台计算机出现问题，请送到专门维修店进行修理。
- C. 你的计算机出现任何毛病，都得找合格的维修人员维修。
- D. 你的计算机出了问题，请按此地址与维修人员进行联系。

42. As our products are popular both at home and abroad, the demand is increasing year by year.

- A. 由于我们的产品在市场上十分畅销，目前已经供不应求了。
- B. 由于我们的产品在国内外很受欢迎，故需求量在逐年增加。
- C. 随着我们产品质量提高，价格下降，在国内市场颇受欢迎。
- D. 随着我们的产品打入国际市场，其市场需求量在逐年提高。

43. The new system, which should be in use by the end of this month. Will replace current one.

- A. 新系统在本月底以前应该启用，以取代现有的系统。
- B. 这个月已启用了新系统，它正逐渐取代现有的系统。
- C. 已经启用的新系统将从本月底开始替换现有的系统。
- D. 本月底已经完成全部新系统的安装和旧系统的维修。

44. There is other information which will help you to know more about the training school.

- A. 这里还有资料供你参考，帮你了解学校培训情况。
- B. 你对学校培训已有所了解，没有必要再索取信息。
- C. 我们还需要其他资料，以便更好地宣传培训工作。
- D. 还有其他信息来帮助你更多地了解这所培训学校。

45. When you hire (雇用) designers, hire them directly, so your money goes straight to them, and not to some services firm. Our company offers a free mail service. We have a list of low-cost designers. Their prices start around \$50 and that's all. Just write an email to us, and you will have a designer directly. We don't get any fees. Your money goes directly to the service provider you choose.

---

---

---

---

### Part IV Writing

**Directions:** This part is to test your ability to do practical writing. You are required to complete the Memo (备忘录) according to the following information given in Chinese. Remember to do your writing on the Translation/Composition Sheet.

说明：假定你是部门秘书 Alice Wang 以部门办公室 (Department Office) 的名义给全体员工发送一份内部通知，并抄送 (CC) 给公司人力资源部 (HR Department)。

内容如下：

1. 发送时间：2014年6月15日·
2. 部门决定举行年度野餐(annual department picnic);
3. 举办时间为7月1日;
4. 提供全部餐饮，还有奖品(prize);
5. 欢迎带配偶(spouse)和孩子;
6. 联系方式：秘书电话 555-2345;
7. 6月25日(星期三)前告知是否参加以及参加人数。

Memo	
Date	(1)
To	(2)
From	(3)
Subject	(4)
CC	(5)
Message	

# 2020 届湖北省普通专升本英语模拟试卷（二）

## Part I Vocabulary & Structure

**Directions:** This part is to test your ability to use words and phrases correctly to construct meaningful and grammatically correct sentences.

### Section A

**Directions:** There are 20 incomplete statements here. You are required to complete each statement by choosing the appropriate answer from the 4 choices marked A, B, C and D. You should mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet with a single line through the center:

1. If you need more information, please contact us \_\_\_\_\_ telephone or email.

A. in    B. by    C. on    D. for

2. The general manager has promised to \_\_\_\_\_ the matter in person.

A. get up    B. look into    C. see off    D. put on

3. The report gives a \_\_\_\_\_ picture of the company's future development.

A. central    B. clean    C. clear    D. comfortable

4. Please \_\_\_\_\_ your report carefully before you hand it in to me.

A. turn to    B. bring about    C. go over    D. put up

5. We \_\_\_\_\_ building the bridge by the end of next month.

A. are finishing    B. have finished    C. would finish    D. will have finished

6. It was in Johnson's hotel \_\_\_\_\_ the business meeting was held last year.

A. this    B. that    C. what    D. which

7. I'm pleased to tell you that the fax machines you ordered are \_\_\_\_\_ now.

A. available    B. convenient    C. wonderful    D. important

8. In recent years, there have been over 30 foreign companies \_\_\_\_\_ business in this city.

A. doing    B. do    C. to do    D. done

9. Mike has already put forward his suggestion \_\_\_\_\_ week.

A. whom    B. what    C. which    D. that

10. I'd appreciate it if you could tell me how \_\_\_\_\_ the machine.

A. operate    B. to operate    C. operating    D. operated

11. During these ten years, many new methods have been \_\_\_\_\_ in the field of foreign language teaching.  
A. adopted B. adapted C. alarmed D. aided
12. People always \_\_\_\_\_ homeless people don't have jobs which is not necessarily true.  
A. presume B. assume C. suppose D. guess
13. Foreign \_\_\_\_\_ from many countries poured into the famine area.  
A. assistant B. aid C. help D. favor
14. I don't need any help, but I do \_\_\_\_\_ your offer.  
A. approve B. appeal C. apply D. appreciate
15. A couple of other books are \_\_\_\_\_ of mention.  
A. valueless B. worthy C. priceless D. worthless
16. Don't take the magazine away, it \_\_\_\_\_ me.  
A. is belonged to B. belongs to C. was belonged to D. is belonging to
17. The notice \_\_\_\_\_ "No smoking" .  
A. is wrote B. reads C. writes D. is read
18. All that can be done \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. has been done B. has done C. have done D. were done
19. Good care must \_\_\_\_\_ babies particularly while they are ill.  
A. take B. take of C. be taken D. be taken of
20. The war \_\_\_\_\_ in 1937.  
A. was broke out B. Has broken out C. broke out D. had broken out

## Part II Reading Comprehension

**Directions:** This part is to test your reading ability. There are 4 tasks for you to fulfill. You should read the reading materials carefully and do the tasks as you are instructed.

### Task 1

**Directions:** This task is the same as Task 1. The 5 questions or unfinished statements are numbered 21 to 25.

#### Ticket-booking Policies

##### General Policies

- \* Once the flight ticket has been issued, the name on the ticket cannot be changed.
- \* Ticket is non-refundable (不能退款的).
- \* Please review your itinerary (行程安排) immediately. If any problems arise before or during your trip, you must call our booking offices right away. If you wait until you return, it's too late.

\* There are times when we are unable to confirm a booking. In that case we will attempt to reach you by phone and email. You must call us back within 48 hours or we may not be able to offer you the booking price.

#### Change Policies

If you change your booking, airlines may charge a fee-\$150 to \$200.

Some tickets do not allow any changes.

Need to change or cancel your trip? Visit our website to check the fees and rules before you decide.

#### Cancellation(取消)Policies

If you cancel your booking you will not receive any moneyback.

You may apply part of your ticket price towards future travel (for a limited time, usually a year)

21. According to the policies, the name on the ticket cannot be changed once the ticket is \_\_\_\_\_

A. booked B. issued C. cancelled D. confirmed

22. If you have any problems during a trip, you should \_\_\_\_\_.

A. ask for a refund B. change your itinerary C. call the booking office D. return the ticket to the office

23. What happens when your ticket booking cannot be confirmed?

A. You should make another booking immediately.

B. You can change your booking free of charge.

C. You will be informed by phone and email.

D. You will still enjoy the booking price.

24. If you want to change a booking, you may have to pay \_\_\_\_\_

A. 10% of the booking price

B. a fee of \$150 to \$200

C. half the ticket price

D. a fixed fee

25. Which of the following statements is TRUE according to the cancellation policies?

A. You can use part of the ticket price for future travel.

B. You can refund the money from the booking office.

C. You can keep the booking effective for one year.

D. You cannot cancel your booking in any case.

#### Task2

**Directions:** After reading the following passage, you will find 5 questions or unfinished statements, numbered 26 to 30. For each question or statement there are 4 choices marked A, B, C and D. You should make the correct choice and mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet with a single line through the center:

If you own a car; you are probably considering buying some kind of car insurance (保险). However, when you are actually purchasing car insurance, it can be difficult for you to decide which is your best choice. The ideal buying process is to first research and decide, then purchase.

##### Research first

Before buying car insurance, you should find out the purpose of your purchase and how the insurance meets your needs.

##### Decide on suitable Car Insurance Policies (保单).

A neglected part of car insurance is the part which covers medical bills. Medical payments can add up very quickly in an accident situation, and the insurance should cover the bills incurred (招致) both by you and by the passengers in your car. Make sure you know the full value that your insurance covers.

##### Purchase the best Car Insurance for your needs

You have a number of choices when it comes to the actual purchase of the car insurance. Each has advantages and disadvantages, and these may be influenced by your individual taste and previous buying experience. Insurance companies may offer you good advice, but prices on the Internet are often better.

26. According to the first paragraph, when buying car insurance, one should first \_.
- decide on the number of policies to purchase
  - do careful research on the different choices
  - choose the best insurance company
  - look for the lowest insurance rate
27. The purpose of research is to find out whether the car insurance.
- includes all the advantages
  - best meets your needs
  - offers the best rate
  - is easy to purchase
28. When buying car insurance, people often neglect \_\_\_\_\_.
- the damage to the car
  - the bills paid by the passengers
  - the part covering the medical bills
  - the background of the insurance company.
29. According to the last paragraph, your choice of car insurance may also be influenced by \_\_\_\_\_.
- your driving habits
  - the kind of car to be insured
  - the attitude of your family members
  - your own taste and buying experience
30. Which of the following might be the best title of the passage?
- Medical Bills Covered in Car Insurance
  - Importance of Buying Car Insurance
  - Advice on Buying Car Insurance
  - Advantages of Car Insurance

### Task3

**Directions:** Read the following passage. After reading it, you should complete the information by filling in the blanks marked 31 to 35 (in no more than 3 words) in the table below.

To: AD Managers and Department Heads

Subject: New Communication Training Program

Clear, friendly, efficient communication skills are essential for building relationships with your customers. You can use it for the benefit of your business. A new online training program is available on the Learn Well website. It will help Company employees create "customer-friendly" communication.

Please visit the website for a memo from the organizer. The memo provides a general view of this customer-friendly communication training program. It also explains how employees can register for the online training. Please forward this email to your employees and encourage them to sign up for training at their leisure time as soon as possible.

Thank you for your support as we work to improve your employees' customer communication in their business activities.

MEMO

To: All Managers and Department Heads Subject: New 31 \_\_\_\_\_ for employees Training Program:

1. Type of training: a new 32\_\_\_\_\_ training program on the Learn Well website
  2. skills to train: clear, 33\_\_\_\_\_ and efficient communication
  3. Purpose of training: to help the employees to create 34\_\_\_\_\_ communication
- way of Registration: visit 35\_\_\_\_\_ for a memo from the organizer

#### Task4

**Directions:** Read the following passage. After reading them, you are required complete the answers that follow the questions(No.36 to No.40). you should write your answers (in no more than 3 words) on the Answer Sheet correspondingly.

Dear Mr. Sampson:

I want to thank you very much for interviewing me yesterday for the position of design engineer. I enjoyed meeting with you and learning more about your research and design work.

The interview made me all the more interested, in the position and working for XELL Company. I believe my education and work experiences fit nicely with the job requirements, and I am certain I could make a significant contribution(贡献) to the company over time.

I would like to re-emphasize my strong desire for the position and working with you and your staff. You provide the kind of opportunity I seek. Please feel free to call me at the following phone number if I can provide you with any additional information: 0811-8222-5555.

Again, thank you for the interview and for your consideration.

Sincerely  
Mary Cruz

36. Why did Mary Cruz write this letter?

To give thanks to Mr. Sampson for \_\_\_\_\_ her yesterday.

37. What position did Mary Cruz apply for?

The position of \_\_\_\_\_

38. Which company did the writer wish to work for.

\_\_\_\_\_.

39. Why is the writer strongly interested in the position?

Because the company provides the kind of \_\_\_\_\_ she seeks.

40. How can the writer be contacted?

By calling her at \_\_\_\_\_

#### Part III Translation English into Chinese

**Directions:** This part, numbered 41 to 45, is to test your ability to translate English into Chinese. Each of the four sentences(No.41 to No.44) is followed by four choices of suggested translation marked A,B,C, and D. Make the best choice and write the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet. Write your translation of the paragraph(No.45) in the corresponding space on the Translation/ Composition Sheet.

41. One purpose of market research is to learn about people—the people who will buy from you.

- A. 市场调查的对象之一是你周围的人，即帮你推销产品的人。
- B. 市场调查的范围之一是向人们，特别是买你产品的人学习。
- C. 市场调查的一个目的就是了解人，即要向买购买东西的人。
- D. 市场调查的一个方法是吸引人，也就是购买你的商品的人。

42. The gift cards are available through the Internet or by phone at 800-700-6000 and at many stores.

- A. 只有在网上报名或打电话800-700-6000预约，你才可以到许多商店领取礼品。
- B. 礼品卡可通过互联网购买，或打电话800-700-6000购买，在很多商店也有售。
- C. 如果上网或者拨打800-700-6000电话，你同样可以得到很多商店赠送的礼品。

D. 礼品卡在所有网站和商店都有售，或可打电话订购，电话号码800-700-6000。

43. Our products are sure to enjoy popularity in your market for their good quality and reasonable prices.

- A. 我们生产的商品物美价廉，相信在你方市场上是一定会找到销路的。
- B. 我们产品的质量标准高，但价格不高，在你方市场却根本无法买到。
- C. 我们的产品由于质量优良、价格合理，一定会受到你方市场的欢迎。
- D. 我们产品的价格虽然高，但是品质优良，所以在你们市场供不应求。

44. Whatever his or her job, the hotel person must possess or develop that quality called “service attitude” .

- A. 不管是否做宾馆工作，人们都必须要加强学习并且养成良好的“服务态度”。
- B. 无论谁到这家宾馆工作，每个人都应该不断提高文化素质并改善“服务态度”。
- C. 宾馆工作的任何人员，都应该首先具有较问的素质，从而养成良好的“服务态度”。
- D. 宾馆工作人员无论做什么工作，都必须具备或养成称之为“服务态度良好”的素质。

45. We have just bought a large quantity of high quality sports shoes, and we are able to offer them to you at the very reasonable prices. We are sure that you will be satisfied with these sports shoes. We would like to remind you that similar prices are mostly unlikely in the near future. We hope, therefore, you will take full advantage of this opportunity. We look forward to your early reply.

---

---

---

---

#### Part IV Writing

**Directions:** This part is to test your ability to do practical writing. You are required to fill in the Reservation form(预定表) and write a fax according to the following information given in Chinese. Remember to do your writing on the Translation/Composition Sheet.

说明：假定你叫王洪，拟在某酒店举办一个会议。请根据下列内容填写登记表。

内容：

1. 入住时间：2012年6月25日，退房时间：2012年6月29日
2. 预定房间：单人房；房间数量20间；
3. 付款方式：现金；
4. 联系电话：010-79968090，传真：010-79968090
5. 电子邮箱：wanghong7080@163.com
6. 特别要求：
  - 1) 会议共20人参加，在酒店享用早、中、晚餐；
  - 2) 要求可以在房间上网；
  - 3) 6月26日至6月28日租用酒店会议室一间，需计算机、投影仪等设备。

Reservation Form

Name: (1) \_\_\_\_\_

Check in: (2) \_\_\_\_\_

Room type: Single Room

Number of rooms reserved: (3) \_\_\_\_\_

Payment: Cash

Tel. number: (4) \_\_\_\_\_

Fax number: 010-79968090

Email: (5) \_\_\_\_\_

Special Requests:

# 2020 届湖北省普通专升本英语模拟试卷（三）

## Part I Vocabulary & Structure

**Directions:** This part is to test your ability to use word and phrases correctly to construct meaningful and grammatically correct sentences.

### Section A

**Directions:** There are 20 incomplete statements here you are required to complete each statement by choosing the appropriate answer from the 4 choices marked A, B, C and D. You should mark the corresponding letter on line Answer Sheet with a single line through the center.

- Mr Smith used to smoke \_\_\_\_\_ but he has given it up recently.  
A. Immediately B. roughly C. heavily D. completely
- It was two years ago \_\_\_\_\_ his sister became a doctor.  
A. That B. where C. who D. what
- The next board meeting will focus \_\_\_\_\_ the benefits for the employees.  
A. By B. for C. with D. on
- We support the view that poor management will \_\_\_\_\_ business failure.  
A. Break up B. take in C. insists D. spends
- In his opinion, success in life mainly \_\_\_\_\_ on how we get along with other people.  
A. Keeps B. depends C. insists D. spends
- We have got to \_\_\_\_\_ a new way to solve this problem.  
A. Tell about B. put out C. think of D. take over
- It is easy to get the software we need \_\_\_\_\_ the market is small.  
A. As if B. so that C. although D. until
- I'm writing to apply for the \_\_\_\_\_ of Sales Manager advertised in last Friday's China Daily.  
A. Business B. trade C. position D. operation
- I'm sorry to tell you that the materials you wanted are \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Taken off B. put up C. sold out D. got off
- It's obvious that these small businesses are \_\_\_\_\_ need of technical support.  
A. In B. on C. with D. to
- Sylvie had always expected that she would marry someone of a similar \_\_\_\_\_ to herself.  
A. Climate B. surroundings C. background D. environment
- The author was required to submit an \_\_\_\_\_ of about 200 words together with his research paper.  
A. Edition B. editorial C. article D. abstract
- The company has had to cut \$ 46,000 from its advertising \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Allowance B. reservation C. budget D. finance
- The fifth-generation computers, with \_\_\_\_\_ intelligence, are being developed and perfected now.  
A. Unreal B. man-made C. fake D. artificial
- The firm \_\_\_\_\_ before the building work was completed  
A. Rushed bankrupt B. walked bankrupt C. went bankrupt D. ran bankrupt
- An accident \_\_\_\_\_ on this road last week.  
A. Was happened B. is happened C. happened D. has happened
- Will you sing a song at the party? —No, I \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Don't B. won't C. shouldn't D. must not
- She \_\_\_\_\_ be ill because I saw her playing tennis just now.  
A. Can't B. mustn't C. shouldn't D. dare not
- You \_\_\_\_\_ return the book now. You can keep it till next week if you like.  
A. Can't B. mustn't C. needn't D. may not
- It is no use \_\_\_\_\_ your past mistakes.

- A. Regretting B. regret C. to regret D. regretted

## Part II Reading Comprehension

**Directions:** This part is to test your reading ability. There are 4 tasks for you to fulfill. You should read the reading materials carefully and do the task as you are instructed.

### Task I

**Directions:** After reading the following passage, you will find 5 questions or unfinished statements, numbered 21 to 25. For each question or statement there are 4 choices marked A, B, C and D. You should make the correct choice and mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet with a single line through the center.

When you speak on the telephone, you cannot use your facial (面部的) expression, eye contact and gestures to help communicate your message. Your voice must do the job.

A good voice is pleasant to listen to because it communicates a positive message. Keep in mind the following qualities of a good voice:

Speak in a voice neither too loud nor too soft. Speak louder when giving important information.

Speak slowly enough so that the listener has a chance to understand your message without your having to repeat it. Keep in mind that as you speak the other person may be taking notes. Pronunciation is the correct way to say a word to avoid mispronouncing (读错音) words, you may wish to check the pronunciation of unfamiliar words in the dictionary before you use them. People with an accent unlike yours may not understand your pronunciation of some words.

You also may not understand the pronunciation of some of their words. In these cases, careful pronunciation is very important for effective communication. You may need to repeat or spell words that are unusual or easy to be misunderstood.

21. when speaking on the phone, the essential factor for successful communication is your \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. voice B. gesture C. eye contact D. facial expression
22. To give important information, a person speaking on the phone should \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Keep a pleasant manner B. use familiar words C. lower the voice D. speak louder
23. The speaker is advised to speak slowly in order to help the listener to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Remember some words  
B. repeat the information  
C. check the message  
D. take some notes
24. To avoid mispronouncing unfamiliar words, you are advised to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Check them in a dictionary  
B. Pronounce them loudly  
C. Use other words instead  
D. Ask other for help
25. Speakers sometimes need to spell some words to help listeners to understand \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Long sentences B. unusual words C. difficult questions D. important expressions

## Task2

**Directions:** After reading the following passage, you will find 5 questions or unfinished statements, numbered 26 to 30. For each question or statement there are 4 choices marked A, B, C and D. You should make the correct choice and mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet with a single line through the center:

### Computer Care Plan

2-Year Service Protection for Desktop Computers Service you can rely on. We're here when you need us. weekends or weekdays, if any trouble should happen. All it takes is a quick phone call to 877-968-6391 or a visit to our online service center.

Did you know most manufacturers' guarantee (保修期) only covers repairs due to faults in materials. Our Computer Care Plan offers so much more!

#### Terms & Conditions Inside

Put in your receipt (收据) here. It is needed to register the plan for using the Computer Care Center tools. Protect what's yours

We protect more than just your computers; we protect your valuable data. Keep your photos, music, email, and financial (财政的) records safe with the enclosed Computer Care Center CD.

Rest easy, we have it covered!

No out-of-pocket expenses for covered repairs. In-home service for desktop computers.

If your product requires three repairs for the same fault, we'll replace it. Round-the-clock customer service.

The Computer Care Center provides an entire year of protection to help keep your family safe and your computer healthy.

#### Prices

##### Product Service Plan

Desktops (under \$400) \$49.88

Desktops (\$400 and above) \$69.88

26. If there is any trouble with your computer, you can \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. contact the manufacturer in person
  - B. write a letter to the service center
  - C. refer to the instructions provided
  - D. visit the service center online
27. Most manufacturers' guarantee just covers the repairs of your computer due to \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. hardware, damage
  - B. wrong operation
  - C. material faults
  - D. missing data
28. When registering for the use of the Care Center tools, you need to show \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. the manufacturer's guarantee card
  - B. your receipt of the computer
  - C. a telephone message record
  - D. your credit card number
29. The enclosed Computer Care Center CD is used to \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. protect your data
  - B. write your emails

C. take photos

30. The product will be replaced if \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. your valuable data has been lost
- B. you have paid the extra service fee
- C. the same fault needs a third repair
- D. it is still within the guarantee period

### Task3

**Directions:** After reading the following passage, you will find 5 questions or unfinished statements, numbered 31 to 35. For each question or statement there are 4 choices marked A.B.C. and D.. You should make the correct choice and mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet with a single line through the center.

A car is made up of more than 30,000 parts. Each part in a new car is as weak as a baby. So a new car requires proper care and servicing. If you're unfamiliar with the parts, you have to read through the owner's instructions carefully.

First of all, the brakes(刹车)of your car are important for safety(安全) reasons. Having them checked regularly can reduce the risks of accidents. Another important thing to consider is engine care. Always remember that the life and performance of your car engine depend on the engine oil. Replace the engine oil when recommended. If you feel the engine is very hot especially during summer it is probably because the cooling system doesn't work well. You'd better get the cooling system serviced before the start of summer.

In a word, timely and proper servicing is an important task for car owners. Good servicing can not only extend the life of your newborn baby, but also ensure your safety, and the safety of those who share the road with you.

31. To get familiar with the parts of a new car, the owner should\_.

- A. regard the car as a new-born baby
- B. have the car serviced before driving it
- C. read through the instructions carefully
- D. examine all of the parts of the new car

32. The brakes should be checked regularly\_\_\_\_\_.

- A. to avoid accidents
- B. to raise speed
- C. to reduce cost
- D. to save gas

33. For a car engine to work long and well, the owner should\_\_\_\_\_.

- A. replace the engine oil as recommended
- B. reduce the use of the car in summer
- C. clean engine parts regularly
- D. change the brakes frequently

34. It is recommended to have the cooling system checked when\_\_\_\_\_.

- A. you buy a new car
- B. summer is coming
- C. the engine oil is replaced
- D. the brakes are out of order

35. The last paragraph tells us that the purpose of carefully servicing a car is \_\_\_\_\_.

- A. to let you sell your car at a good price
- B. to extend its life and ensure safety
- C. to reduce the cost of car servicing
- D. to make the car run faster

#### Task4

**Directions:** Read the following passage. After reading them, you are required complete the answers that follow the questions(No.36 to No.40). you should write your answers (in no more than 3 words) on the Answer Sheet correspondingly.

Apteryx Company Ltd

Apteryx Company Ltd ,is a software development company. We are develop software applications and systems, Which are the leading products in the business fields. Our current products include medical imaging solutions and applications for independent medical practices and large medical suppliers both at home and abroad. We also provide software development services.

Apteryx Ltd. Believes in a fun and creative company culture and offers great benefits to its employees including in-service career training, free lunch, coffee or tea breaks, great retirement package, and a relaxed atmosphere.

Apteryx Ltd. Is an Equal Opportunity Employer offering a great work environment, challenging career opportunities and attractive salaries. Join our team!

Apteryx Ltd

313S High St Ste 200

Akron,OH44308

Web:<http://www.apteryx.com/careers>

Apteryx Company Ltd.

Type of company: a (36) \_\_\_\_\_ company

Products: software applications and systems

Service intend for: independent (37) \_\_\_\_\_ practices and suppliers, both at home and abroad

Company culture: fun and (38) \_\_\_\_\_

Benefits offered:

- 1) in-service career(39) \_\_\_\_\_
- 2) free lunch, coffee or tea breaks,
- 3) great(40) \_\_\_\_\_ package.

#### Part III Translation English into Chinese

**Directions:** This part, numbered 41 to 45, is to test your ability to translate English into Chinese. Each of the four sentences(No.41 to No.44) is followed by four choices of suggested translation marked A,B,C,and D. Make the best choice and write the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet. Write your translation of the paragraph(No.45) in the corresponding space on the Translation/ Composition Sheet.

41. With fuel prices going up, car buyers are changing their idea of buying a car.

- A. 燃料的价格正在随着购车者买车想法的改变而上涨。
- B. 燃料价格的涨落正在不断改变着购车族人群的构成。
- C. 随着燃料价格的上涨, 购车者买车的想法正在改变。
- D. 燃料价格上涨的时候, 购车者买车的想法也会改变。

42. You have to raise the quality of your our prod products because buyers in those countries are very much quality-minded

- A. 你们的当务之急是提高产品质量因为这些买家对质量都很挑剔。
- B. 质量第一对你们很重要, 因为所有国家的人都非常在乎产品质量。
- C. 你们要让那些国家的买家对产品感兴趣, 就必须明确质量优先。
- D. 你们必须提高产品质量, 因为那些国家买家的质量意识都非常强。

43. Trading companies need to ensure their ability to handle orders efficiently, making an online system an essential sales channel.

- A. 贸易公司需要得到明确的指令，才能把重要的网络销售系统建立起来。
- B. 贸易公司需要保证他们有能力来处理订单，才能使网上销售渠道变得重要。
- C. 贸易公司需确保拥有高效处理订单的能力，使在线系统成为重要销售渠道。
- D. 贸易公司需要有办法来执行公司的指令，以便建立起基本的网络销售系统

44. It is necessary to have a good understanding of all the terms and conditions before signing a contract.

- A. 先好好讨论一下各项条款，看是否有必要签合同。
- B. 在签订合同之前必须充分理解合同中的所有条款。
- C. 对所有合同条款都已正确理解，现在可以签合同。
- D. 合同的所有条款要更好地解释之后方能签字生效。

45. Thank you for coming to the job interview at our office yesterday. Within two weeks we will tell you our decision on your application. We want you to know that we will seriously consider your application. If, for some reason, we cannot offer you a position at this time, we will keep your application on record. When there is a job opening, we will inform you immediately.

---



---



---



---

#### Part IV Writing

**Directions:** This part is to test your ability to do practical writing. You are required to fill in the Reservation form(预定表) and write a fax according to the following information given in Chinese. Remember to do your writing on the Translation/Composition Sheet.

说明：假定你是秘书Linda Wang，严按下列内容填写给经理John Brown的电话留言。内容：

1. 来电人：APP公司 Mr. Peter margin
2. 来电时间：12月13日上午10：30
3. 来电内容：Mr. Peter Margin 将于下周一去纽约，下周没有时间与您见面。他希望在本周五上午9：30能见到您，讨论双方合作事宜。您是否有空？希望您收到留言后尽早回电给Mr. Peter Margin.

<b>Telephone Message</b>	
Date:(1)	Time:(2)
From:(3)	
To:(4)	
<input type="checkbox"/> TELEPHONED	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> PLEASE CALL BACK
<input type="checkbox"/> CALLED TO SEE YOU	<input type="checkbox"/> WILL CALL AGAIN
<input type="checkbox"/> WANTS TO SEE YOU	<input checked="" type="checkbox"/> URGENT
Message:(5)	

Signed by:(6)

# 2020 届湖北省普通专升本英语模拟试卷（四）

## Part I Vocabulary & Structure

**Directions:** This part is to test your ability to use word and phrases correctly to construct meaningful and grammatically correct sentences.

### Section A

**Directions:** There are 20 incomplete statements here you are required to complete each statement by choosing the appropriate answer from the 4 choices marked A, B, C and D. You should mark the corresponding letter on line Answer Sheet with a single line through the center.

1. He was speaking so fast \_\_\_\_\_ we could hardly follow him.  
A. What B. as C. but D. that
2. Don't \_\_\_\_\_ me to help you if you are not working hard.  
A. Guess B. speak C. plan D. expect
3. Breakfast can be \_\_\_\_\_ to you in your room for an additional charge.  
A. Eaten B. served C. used D. made
4. In recent year, there have been over 30 foreign companies \_\_\_\_\_ business in this city.  
A. Doing B. do C. to do D. does
5. Some companies might not let you rent a car \_\_\_\_\_ you have a credit card.  
A. Where B. because C. since D. unless
6. I agree to the idea \_\_\_\_\_ our staff should use recycled(再生的) paper to save money.  
A. What B. as C. which D. that
7. By the end of this year, they \_\_\_\_\_ this large project in Europe.  
A. Had completed B. complete C. are completing D. will have completed
8. More than 100 people died \_\_\_\_\_ the earthquake in that area.  
A. In case of B. as a result of C. in addition to D. on the basis of
9. \_\_\_\_\_ I'm concerned, it is important to get a job first.  
A. As long as B. As well as C. As soon as D. As far as
10. In his opinion, success in life mainly \_\_\_\_\_ on how we get along with other people.  
A. Keeps B. depends C. insists D. spends
11. We had \_\_\_\_\_ that interest rates would have fallen further by now.  
A. Appreciated B. participated C. appropriate D. anticipated
12. Experts warned against chewing tobacco as a \_\_\_\_\_ for smoking.  
A. Substitute B. successor C. relief D. succession
13. \_\_\_\_\_ I saw the place, I knew it was the right house for us.  
A. The instant B. For an instant C. On the instant D. In an instant
14. \_\_\_\_\_ player scores the highest number of points will be the winner.  
A. Whichever B. Whomever C. Whatever D. Whoever
15. In the boardrooms of most big corporations, women are in the \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. minimum B. lack C. scarcity D. minority
16. People couldn't help \_\_\_\_\_ the foolish emperor in the procession.  
A. Laugh at B. to laugh at C. laughing at D. laughing on
17. Do you remember \_\_\_\_\_ me at a party last year?  
A. Meet B. to meet C. having met D. met
18. The next morning she found the man in bed, \_\_\_\_\_ dead.  
A. Lying B. lie C. lay D. laying
19. I can't imagine \_\_\_\_\_ that with them.  
A. Do B. to do C. being done D. doing

20. Weather \_\_\_\_\_, we'll go out on a picnic tomorrow.  
A. Permits B. permitting C. permitted D. has permitted

## Part II Reading Comprehension

**Directions:** This part is to test your reading ability. There are 4 tasks for you to fulfill. You should read the reading materials carefully and do the task as you are instructed.

### Task I

**Directions:** After reading the following passage, you will find 5 questions or unfinished statements, numbered 21 to 25. For each question or statement there are 4 choices marked A, B, C and D. You should make the correct choice and mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet with a single line through the center.

A share house is money-saving. When you share a house, your bills, rent and possible food cost will be much lower. If the house is already established, you don't have to worry about buying things like a fridge and TV.

#### Choosing good housemates (合租人)

Moving in with friends can be fun but it can result in conflict (冲突) and loss of friendship. Think carefully about the type of person suited to your character.

Ask advice from friends who have lived in share houses, or consult a youth worker or a relative.

#### Setting some guidelines

Every share house is different, but there are some guidelines (准则) that can help you avoid conflict.

\*Issue or ask for a receipt (收据) when you paid or collect the rent.

\*Where possible, deal with problems through face-to-face communication.

Our living in a share house web-page has some advice and ideas to help make sharing with your housemates a great experience.

21. According to the first paragraph, the main advantage of a share house is that \_\_\_\_\_  
A. it avoids wasting time  
B. it saves your money  
C. it develops friendship  
D. it prevents conflict
22. According to the passage, an ideal housemate is a person who is \_\_\_\_\_.!  
A. suitable for your character  
B. good at doing housework  
C. willing to help you  
D. easy to talk with
23. When you collect the rent from your housemate, you are advised to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. write down the amount  
B. choose a right date  
C. demand cash only  
D. give a receipt
24. To solve a problem with your housemate it is better for you to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. discuss it with the person on the telephone

- B. seek advice from your friends or relatives
  - C. talk with him or her face to face
  - D. speak to your parents about first
25. The passage is mainly about how to \_\_\_\_\_
- A. choose a good neighbor
  - B. look for a new house
  - C. live in a share house
  - D. share housework

### Task2

**Directions:** After reading the following passage, you will find 5 questions or unfinished statements, numbered 26 to 30. For each question or statement there are 4 choices marked A, B, C and D. You should make the correct choice and mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet with a single line through the center:

Being a salesman, the most important thing is to understand people. You've got to know what they're thinking. If you can figure that out, you can get them to do a lot. They come in with an idea about what they want. You get them talking about themselves, about what they like.

If it's a man, you talk about football, or something like that. If it's a woman, you ask her about fashions. That way they get comfortable with you. You ask them a lot of questions and get them saying yes. Then they just get into the habit of saying yes.

In the end, you can put them into anything you want, if you're really good. For example, if they need a little car for the city; you send them home a truck. Of course, I wouldn't really do that. It wouldn't be right. You've got to sell on this job, but you also have to be fair. It's not fair to take advantage of people too much. There are some people in this business who'd do anything. But I don't believe in that.

26. To be a good salesman, the most important thing is to \_\_\_\_\_
- A. learn from different kinds of people
  - B. understand what people are thinking
  - C. see what people usually do in daily life
  - D. watch what changes people have made
27. According to the passage, you can make a woman feel comfortable by \_\_\_\_\_.
- A. Talking about fashions
  - B. Playing football together
  - C. Sending a small gift to her
  - D. Saying yes to her questions
28. One way to make people get into the habit of saying yes is to \_\_\_\_\_
- A. Ask them to say what they like
  - B. Tell them to do anything you want
  - C. Help them feel confident in themselves
  - D. Get them to say yes to a lot of your questions
29. According to the last paragraph, the author believes that \_\_\_\_\_
- A. It is right to do anything in business
  - B. It is useless to believe in what customers say
  - C. It is unfair to take too much advantage of people

D. It is dangerous to listen to the advice of a salesman

30. Which of the following statements is TRUE according to the passage?

- A. Most women like to talk about sports events.
- B. Some business people would do anything to sell
- C. It's difficult to understand other people very well
- D. You can make people do anything by talking with them

### Task3

**Directions:** The following is a memo. After reading it, you should complete the information by filling in the blanks marked 31 to 35 (in no more than 3 words) in the table below.

MEMO

To: Katherine Anderson, Manager

From: Stephen Back, Sales Department

Date: 19 November, 2010

Subject: Resignation (辞职)

Dear Ms. Katherine Anderson,

I am writing to inform you of my intention to resign (辞职) from G&S Company.

I very much appreciate my four years' working for the company. The training has been excellent and I have gained valuable experience working within an efficient and friendly team environment. In particular, I am very grateful for your personal guidance during these first years of my career.

I feel now that it is time to further develop my knowledge and skills in a different environment. I would like to leave, if possible, in a month's time on Saturday, 18, December. This will allow me to complete my current job responsibilities. I hope that this suggested arrangement is acceptable to the company.

Once again, thank you for your attention.

Memo

Date: 19 November, 2010

Memo to: Katherine Anderson, 31

Memo from: 32, Sales Department Subject: Resignation

Years of working for G&S Company: 33

Reasons for leaving: to further develop 34 in another environment Time of leaving the position : on 35

### Task4

**Directions:** Read the following passage. After reading them, you are required complete the answers that follow the questions (No.36 to No.40). you should write your answers (in no more than 3 words) on the Answer Sheet correspondingly.

If you are staying in the UK for more than 6 months, it may be useful to open a UK bank account. There are a lot of advantages of having a UK current (checking) account:

Paying bills

Many landlords prefer to collect rent directly from a bank account.

You may be able to obtain cheaper services if you pay bills directly from a bank account, e.g. telephone/gas/water/electricity.

If you are given a chequebook, you can also write cheques as a safe way of paying for things.

If you are given a chequebook, you can also write cheques as a safe way of paying for things.

### Cash

You can easily obtain money from cash machines, or pay directly from your account using a debit card (借记卡).

### Saving money

It is generally cheaper to use a UK account than it is to pay by credit card (信用卡) or withdraw (提取) cash from a foreign bank.

### Employment

If you work in the UK, some employers require you to have a bank account so that you can get your pay.

#### Advantages of UK Current Account

Paying bills: 1) to pay rent directly from 36 \_\_\_\_\_

2) to obtain 37 \_\_\_\_\_ services

3) to pay for things with cheques Safely

Cash: 1) to obtain money from 38 \_\_\_\_\_ easily

2) to pay directly from your account

Saving money: cheaper to use a 39 \_\_\_\_\_ account

Employment: to get your 40 \_\_\_\_\_ through a bank account

### Part III Translation English into Chinese

**Directions:** This part, numbered 41 to 45, is to test your ability to translate English into Chinese. Each of the four sentences (No. 41 to No. 44) is followed by four choices of suggested translation marked A, B, C, and D. Make the best choice and write the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet. Write your translation of the paragraph (No. 45) in the corresponding space on the Translation/ Composition Sheet.

41. I believe my education background and experience in team work fit in nicely with the job requirements.
- A. 我认为这个团队应该招聘像我这样受过教育并有经验的人。  
B. 我相信我的学历和团队工作经历完全符合这一职务的要求。  
C. 我相信我受过的教育和经历完全能够适应团队工作的需要。  
D. 我认为我受到的教育能够很好地满足这个团队提出的要求。
42. The department head does not believe that this is the right way to deal with the problem.
- A. 部门领导并不认为这就是发现问题的唯一途径。  
B. 部门领导不相信这一方法能正确找出那问题。  
C. 部门领导认为这不是解决这一问题的正确途径。  
D. 部门领导相信不用这个办法也是能发现问题的。
43. We need a recommendation letter from your former employer before we can give you a definite answer.
- A. 在得到我们的答复之前, 你必须向你原来的老板去索要一份证明函。  
B. 我们给你答复的前提是, 你以前的老板愿意向我们提供一份推荐信。  
C. 我们需要你以前的雇主提供一份推荐信, 然后才能给你明确的答复。  
D. 我们给你的答复是, 你向以前的老板索取一份肯定你工作的证明信。
44. We are thinking about how to ensure that our employees can work under the best possible conditions.
- A. 我们一直在想, 如何让我们的员工总是在最好的条件下进行工作。  
B. 我们始终认为, 我们的员工一直都是在最好的工作状态下进行工作。  
C. 我们正在考虑怎样才能确保我们的员工在尽可能好的条件下工作。  
D. 我们始终认为, 我们的责任是确保我们的员工在最佳状态下工作。
45. Your suggestion of moving the tools to the front of the store is an excellent one. Everyone thinks that the tools are now much easier to reach. Customers like you are very important to us. One of the reasons for our success is that people like you take the time to share their good ideas with us. We are grateful for your suggestion and continued support of our business.

---

---

---

---

#### Part IV Writing

**Directions:** This part is to test your ability to do practical writing. You are required to write a business letter according to the following instructions given in Chinese. Remember to do your writing on the Translation/Composition Sheet.

说明：假定你是销售部经理王明，根据下列信息写一封信。

写信日期：2011年6月19日

收信人：MR. John Brown

内容：

1. 感谢对方订购了你公司的最新产品；
2. 所订购的货物已发出，大约一周后到达
3. 收到货物后请回复；
4. 希望能继续与对方合作。

注意信函格式！

Words for reference:

订购order

货物goods

发出deliver

合作 v. cooperate ; n. cooperation

# 2020 届湖北省普通专升本英语模拟试卷（五）

## Part I Vocabulary & Structure

**Directions:** This part is to test your ability to use word and phrases correctly to construct meaningful and grammatically correct sentences.

### Section A

**Directions:** There are 20 incomplete statements here you are required to complete each statement by choosing the appropriate answer from the 4 choices marked A, B, C and D. You should mark the corresponding letter on line Answer Sheet with a single line through the center.

- Please call me back \_\_\_\_\_ you see this message.  
A. As well as B. as early as C. as far as D. as soon as
- I feel it's a great honor for me \_\_\_\_\_ to this party.  
A. To invite B. invite C. having invited D. to be invited
- If more money had been invested, we \_\_\_\_\_ a factory in Asia.  
A. Will set up B. have setup C. would have set up D. had setup
- It is easy to get the software we need \_\_\_\_\_ the market is small.  
A. As if B. so that C. although D. until
- \_\_\_\_\_ I am concerned, it is important to get a job first.  
A. As long as B. As well as C. As soon as D. As far as
- The Quality Control staff is responsible \_\_\_\_\_ the quality of the products that come out of the factory.  
A. For B. of C. with D. to
- Language learning is a slow process, which \_\_\_\_\_ a lot of effort, time and patience.  
A. Requires B. leaves C. pays D. offers
- Some companies might not let you rent a car \_\_\_\_\_ you have a credit card.  
A. For B. because C. since D. unless
- It was in Jonson's hotel \_\_\_\_\_ the business meeting was held last year.  
A. This B. that C. what D. which
- If you want to get there before dark, you should start your journey \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. At times B. at once C. in person D. in detail
- It has three pretty bedrooms, decorated in well-chosen fabrics, and \_\_\_\_\_ with antiques and pine.  
A. Provided B. furnished C. offered D. equipped
- It is \_\_\_\_\_ certain that you'll get your money back.  
A. By no mean B. by no means C. by all mean D. by means
- It is a \_\_\_\_\_ truth that man is the only animal that has the power to speak and reason.  
A. Worthy B. universal C. virtual D. authentic
- It was reported that the emergency aid program has been \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Slowed down B. cut down C. scaled down D. measured down
- Lance does what he wants, \_\_\_\_\_ what his parents say.  
A. All alone B. spite C. regardless of D. careless with
- The missing boys were last seen \_\_\_\_\_ near the river.  
A. To be playing B. playing C. play D. to play
- Although \_\_\_\_\_ money, his parents managed to send him to university.  
A. Lacked B. lacking of C. lacking D. lacked in
- Mr. Thomas found the coins while \_\_\_\_\_ in his back garden.  
A. Digging B. was digging C. dug D. being digging
- If the project \_\_\_\_\_ by the end of this month is delayed, the construction company will be fined.  
A. To be completed B. is completed C. completed D. being completed
- Our mp3 wants \_\_\_\_\_. You'd better have it done as soon as possible.

- A. Repair   B. repairing   C. to repair   D. being repaired

## Part II Reading Comprehension

**Directions:** This part is to test your reading ability. There are 4 tasks for you to fulfill. You should read the reading materials carefully and do the task as you are instructed.

### Task I

**Directions:** After reading the following passage, you will find 5 questions or unfinished statements, numbered 21 to 25. For each question or statement there are 4 choices marked A, B, C and D. You should make the correct choice and mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet with a single line through the center.

On deciding to buy your first home, you're likely to be excited and full of enthusiasm (热情), However, you should take care to plan well and understand the process to avoid any unexpected problems.

Here are some things you'll need to consider to help you get started.

First, think about what you need and what you want from your new home. Perhaps you need to be close to your place of work because you don't drive. It may be that you want a large garden to satisfy your gardening hobby.

Be sure to understand the differences between needs and wants as it's likely you'll need to give up some of your wants.

Then, use the internet, your local library and your friends and family to find out all you can about the buying process. You'll need to make decisions down the line and it will help if you understand the buying process.

At this stage, you will normally need to contact a mortgage(按揭) advisor to see how much money you can borrow. Of course, there are lots of costs related to buying a home which may not be immediately clear to first time buyers.

21. If you want to buy your first home, you are advised to \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. Borrow some money from a bank  
B. Save enough money in advance  
C. Understand the buying process  
D. Get to know the housing agent
22. When buying a new home, the first thing you should consider is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. The size of the garden  
B. Your needs and wants  
C. Your jobs and income  
D. The environment
23. The purpose of contacting a mortgage advisor is \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. To see whether the price of the home is reasonable  
B. To ask about the legal issues related to the buying  
C. To make sure you understand the buying process  
D. To find out how much money you can borrow
24. If you are a first time buyer, you may not be aware of \_\_\_\_\_.  
A. The various costs related to buying a home

- B. The history of the home you want to buy
  - C. The time when you can move in
  - D. The name of the house owner
25. The passage is written mainly for \_\_\_\_.
- A. House owners
  - B. Mortgage advisors
  - C. Housing companies
  - D. First time home buyers

**Task2**

**Directions:** After reading the following passage, you will find 5 questions or unfinished statements, numbered 26 to 28. For each question or statement there are 4 choices marked A, B, C and D. You should make the correct choice and mark the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet with a single line through the center:

**HELP WANTED**

Irwin, Smith & Associate

We are seeking an experienced purchasing officer for our Purchasing Department.

the successful candidate will have a minimum 2 years of related experience, Grade 12 education, experience with Impact purchasing software and a willingness to work occasional weekends and overtime.

We offer a friendly working atmosphere and an attractive benefits package.

Send resume to Kevin n MacDonald in Human Resources.

Due to the large number of applicants, we will contact only those candidates who are invited to an interview.

26. What job position is advertised?
- A. A computer programmer.
  - B. A sales manager.
  - C. A purchasing officer.
  - D. A project engineer.
27. Candidates who apply for the position should \_\_\_\_.
- A. have overseas work experience
  - B. have a college degree
  - C. have the experience of working in an IT company
  - D. have at least 2 years of related experience
28. According to the ad, the job sometimes requires \_\_\_\_.
- A. working overtime
  - B. traveling to a foreign country
  - C. doing some typing work
  - D. working under high-stress conditions

**Task3**

**Directions:** The following is a memo. After reading, you should complete the information by filling in the blanks marked 29 to 33 (in no more than 3 words) in the table below

**Lipstick That Makes You Totally Different**

All right ladies, if somebody said " You are so beautiful", would you find it romantic?

Women will go to great lengths to make themselves more beautiful, even for only a small change. A nice lipstick is such a little thing but it can have such big charm. L'OREAL Paris's new product Colour Riche provides dozens of beautiful colors.

Women can choose different colors to reflect different mods. Light pink lipstick creates kind of romantic and feminine atmosphere, deep purple lips hint intense emotion and bright red creates a both sexy and classical look.

So print a perfect signal of love in your lover's face, Colour Riche will help you.

Priced at 95 yuan (\$11.5) for each, available at L'OREAL counters in most large department stores.

1. The new product of L'OREAL Paris is called " 29 ", priced at 30 for each.

2. Usually, deep purple lipsticks hint 31 while bright red creates a 32 and 33 look.

#### Task4

**Directions:** Read the following passage. After reading them, you are required complete the answers that follow the questions(No.34 to No.38). you should write your answers (in no more than 3 words) on the Answer Sheet correspondingly.

#### Two simple but effective tips for having a business talk

Prepare

Gather as much information as you can before the business talk practice. Making your case. Think of the responses you might receive and imagine how you will answer. Try and imagine everything that could possibly occur during the talk, and prepare a response.

Take Your time

It is important to be mentally present and willing to consider what the other party says. Feel free to walk away from the talk for a moment to collect your thoughts and reconsider your position. The other party might say something that changes your idea of the business deal. Responding too quickly might cause you to miss something important. Take the time to take a breath, drink a glass of water and remind yourself of what you aim to get out of the business talk.

34. What should you do first in preparing for a business talk?

Gather as much \_\_\_\_\_ as you can.

35. What should you do before you prepare a response?

Try to think of \_\_\_\_\_ that could occur during the talk

36. What is important during a business talk?

Being mentally present and willing to think about what \_\_\_\_\_ says

37. Why does the writer encourage you to walk away from the talk for a moment?

In order to collect \_\_\_\_\_ and reconsider your position.

38. Why is it bad practice to make a quick response?

It might cause you to \_\_\_\_\_.

#### Part III Translation English into Chinese

**Directions:** This part, numbered 39 to 42, is to test your ability to translate English into Chinese. Each of the four sentences (No.39 to No.42) is followed by four choices of suggested translation marked A, B, C, and D. Make the best choice and write the corresponding letter on the Answer Sheet. Write your translation of the paragraph (No.43) in the corresponding space on the Translation/ Composition Sheet.

39. As a matter of fact your product will sell well if the advertisement is convincing.

A.事实上, 如果广告令人信服的话, 你们的产品会很畅销。

B.事实上, 由于人们相信广告, 你们的产品会卖出好价钱。

C.实际上, 尽管广告做得较差, 你们出售的产品还是好的。

D.实际上, 要是广告能说服人, 你们产品就能卖出好价钱。

40. On account of rapid increase of trade with China we have recently established a new branch there.

A.由于最近在中国设立了新公司, 我们增开了在中国的贸易账户。

B.由于对华贸易的高速增长, 我们最近在中国设立了新的分公司。

- C.为适应对华贸易的快速增长，我们新公司最近在中国隆重开业。
- D.为了在中国建立一家新公司，我们需要重新开设一个贸易账户。

41. It seems that women are now more attracted to the convenience of online shopping than they used to be.  
A.现在看来，利用网络购物的女性与过去相比，人数越来越多。  
B.看起来网上购物更加容易了，现在比过去更能吸引现代女性。  
C.现代的妇女与传统的妇女比较起来，似乎更加喜欢网络购物。  
D.看起来，如今的妇女比起过去更加为网络购物的便捷所吸引。

42. There was a heated discussion about customer service at the meeting until the manager came up with a great idea.

- A.经理提出的关于客户服务的好主意，在会议上引起了大家的热烈讨论。
- B.经理到会之前，会议还在对那个客户提出的合理建议进行热烈的争论。
- C.会议就客服问题进行了热烈讨论，直到经理提出一个绝妙主意才停止。
- D.会议一直在热烈讨论客服问题，知道结束时经理才想出了一个好主意。

43. Ladies and gentlemen, I am happy to introduce to you Mr. Wang Qiang, our new sales manager. He is an expert in sales and marketing. For the last three years, Mr. Wang has worked for JHS Company. Today he will explain to you what our company expects you to do. He will be meeting each of you to discuss your monthly sales plans in the following days and he is ready to answer any questions you might have.

---

---

---

---

#### Part IV Writing

**Directions:** This part is to test your ability to do practical writing. You are required to write A Letter of Application according to the following instructions given in Chinese. Remember to do your writing on the Translation/Composition Sheet.

说明：假定你叫王淋。根据下列内容写一封求职信。

写信日期：2010年12月19日

内容：

1. 从2010年12月10日《中国日报》上获悉BAC公司招聘办公室秘书职位的信息；
2. 毕业于东方学院（注：专业自拟），获得多种技能证书；
3. 曾在DDF公司兼职，熟悉办公室工作，熟练使用电脑；
4. 随信附上简历；
5. 希望能获得面试机会。

注意信函格式！

Words for reference.

《中国日报》	China Daily
工商管理	Business Administration
证书	certificate
附上	enclose

# 答案解析

## 2020 届湖北省普通专升本英语模拟试卷（一）答案解析

### Part I Vocabulary & Structure

#### 1. 答案 A

解析:本题考查近义词的用法。句意:参加网上培训班的费用是多少? *sth. costs some money* 意为“某物花费多少钱”。题中的 *it* 是形式主语,指的就是后面的“*to take the online training course*”。本题正好符合这个结构。故 A 项为正确答案。C、D 项都有“花费”之意,但它们的主语必须是人;而且两者的用法也不同:*sb. pay for sth.* 某人用钱支付某物;*sb. spend some money on sth* 某人在某物上花费多少钱。

#### 2. 答案 D

解析:本题考查介词与动词的相关搭配。句意:如果你搬家,你得告诉我们新地址。*inform sb. of sth.* 为固定搭配,意为“告诉某人某事”,故 D 项为正确答案。

#### 3. 答案 C

解析:尽管他的报告简短,但我们清晰地了解了这个新项目 H。*If* 意为“如果”,*because* 意为“因为”,*although* 意为“虽然”,*when* 意为“当……的时候”。

#### 4. 答案 A

解析:本题考查现在完成进行时的时间状语。句意:自 2008 年以来,这家公司一直在生产这种机床。本句中 *has been producing* 属于现在完成进行时,它的时间状语为一段时间;2008 为一个过去的时间点,故只有 *since* 符合题意。故 A 项为正确答案。

#### 5. 答案 B

解析:本题考查动词与名词的搭配。句意:说实话,对于昨天的会议我真的什么都不知道。*to tell the truth* 为固定用法意为“讲出事实”。故 B 项为正确答案。

#### 6. 答案 B

解析:本题考查固定搭配。句意:你的销售手段(是否成功)将取决于与你打交道的客户。*depend on/upon* 为固定搭配意为“依赖、取决于”。故 B 项为正确答案。

#### 7. 答案 A

解析:本题考查形容词的含义。句意:我们公司的服务遍及全球近 80 个国家。*available* 意为“可提供的,可获得的”,符合句意。故 A 项为正确选项。*natural* 意为“自然的”,*relative* 意为“相对的,比较的,相关的”,*careful* 意为“仔细的”。

#### 8. 答案: C

考点:词汇意思与搭配

说明:此题考查英语词汇意义的辨别与搭配。选项中的四个词都是名词。*size* 的意思是“大小,尺寸,规模”;*set* 的意思是“(一)套,(一)组”;*amount* 的意思是“量,数量”;*series* 的意思是“系列”。*a large amount of* 的意思是“大量的”,通常后跟不可数名词。根据句意,C) *amount* 是正确答案。

#### 9. 答案: A

考点:词汇意思

说明:此题考查英语词汇意义的辨别。四个选项都是形容词。*available* 的意思是“可获得的,可利用的”;*natural* 的意思是“自然的”;*relative* 的意思是“相对的”;*careful* 的意思是“小心的”。根据句意,A) *available* 是正确答

案。

10. 答案: D

解析: 本题考查固定搭配。句意: 你可以向这些专家咨询有关求职的建议。Ask for sth.是固定用法, 表示“询问”。Ask sb. for advice 表示“寻求某人的建议”。故 D 项正确。

11. 答案: B

解析: 本句语境表达的是 Jack 和他姐姐之前的不同点, 所以 B. Unlike 是表示“不同于”的意思。C. liking 的含义是“v. 喜爱 / n. 爱好, 像...的人”, D. Alike 的含义是“adj. 十分相似的”, A. dislike 的含义是“v. 不喜欢”。

12. 答案: A

解析: 本句语境表达的是一种全新的情况的出现, 因此选 A. arise 表示(问题, 困难)等出现, B. rise 表示上升, 升起, 常用语助于提高自身向更高位置移动, C. raise 表示提高, 举起, 后面一般要加宾语, D. arouse 表示激起, 唤起, 唤醒, 一般形容情绪等无实物东西, 如感觉, 意识等。

13. 答案: B

解析: 本句句意为“几个外貌可疑的\_\_在房子外站着”, 根据语义可以先排除掉 A personalities 性格, 个性, 表示人的时候指名人, 风流人物, 以及 D temperatures 温度, 表示人的时候指温和的人, 而 C person 般情况下不加 s 使用, 如使用复数, 一般用 people 这一集合名词, B characters 有“(令人讨厌的或古怪的)”人的意思。

14. 答案: C

解析: 根据语义, which 后面为 one 的定语从句, one 在这里指代汽车, 因此定语从句和填空部分均是形容 vehicle, 且意思相同, 定语从句部分为“被车主或其他人遗弃的车辆”, 所以填空部分也应为“被遗弃的”, 因此选择 C abandoned“(有意)废弃的, 丢弃的(实物)”。A. deserted 有“(因人离去而)被遗留的”, 没有弃之为废品之慈。B quit 表示“被停下的”, D left 含义是“遗留的, 留下的”。

15. 答案: B

解析: 本句语境是“沙漠和高山对从一处搬到另一处的人来说一直是”, 因此选择 B barrier 表示“障碍, 阻碍”。A jam 指“拥堵, 堵塞”, 常用来形容交通拥堵, C fence 表示“篱笆, 栅栏”, D prevention 表示“预防, 防范”。

16. 答案 B

解析: 本题考查主谓一致。主语为 nobody, 为单数第三人称, 且句意为主动语态, 因而选 B。

17. 答案 B

解析: 本题考查主谓一致。主语是 The singer and the dancer, 为复数, 动词用原形, 且句意为主动语态, 因而选 B

18. 答案 A

解析: 本题考查主谓一致。主语是数学这一门学科, 并且陈述一个事实, 用一般现在时。

19. 答案 B

解析: 本题考查主谓一致, 当警察做主语时, 为复数。且通过 soon 可知动作发生在将来, be+位移动词的现在分词形式表将来。

20. 答案 B

解析: 通过 a series of 后用单数, 从 recently 可判断时态为现在完成时。

## Part II Reading Comprehension

### Task 1

21 答案 C

解析: 从文中第一段第一句 “If you have an AT&T Business Direct account, you can have your telephone bill paid

automatically each month.“可知答案。

22 答案 B

解析：从文中第一段第二句“You can make payments online with a bank account or use one of the following credit cards...”可知答案。

23 答案 C

解析：从 Instruction 第二条“If your business has more than one registered account, first select the account you need from the 'Account Number' menu...”可知答案。

24 答案 C

解析：从 Instructions 第三条“If you have never made an online payment before, you will be asked whether you want to make a payment by using a bank account or credit card. Select either 'Bank Account' or 'Credit Card' from the 'Select Payment Method' menu.”可知答案。

25.答案 C

解析：文章开始举例介绍了在线支付的便捷，之后介绍了通过银行账户和信用卡进行在线支付的步骤，最后交代了在线支付的时间。故选择 C。如何使用在线银行服务。

### Task2

26.C 事实细节题。由本文第一段最后一句提供的信息“需要仔细阅读用户使用手册”，可知 C 项为正确答案。文章第一段中虽然提到新车有如婴儿一样，但其意在强调车子需要恰当的照管和养护，而不是真正意义上地把汽车当作婴儿，因此排除 A 项。B、D 项均未被提及。

27.A 事实细节题。由第二段第二句“定期检查刹车能减少发生事故的风险”，可知定期检查刹车的目的是避免事故，故 A 项为正确答案。B 项“提高速度”，C 项“减少开支”和 D 项“节约汽油”在文中均未提及。

28.A 事实细节题。第二段第五句“在得到换机油的建议时就予以更换”与 A 项“按照建议更换机油”吻合。故 A 项为正确答案。文章提及夏天的内容是关于冷却系统的保养问题，与发动机的保养无关，故 B 项“夏天少用车”不正确。C 项“定期清洁发动机”未在原文出现 D 项“经常更换刹车片”从选项内容看就可判断与发动机(engine)保养无关。

29. B 事实细节题。由第二段倒数第一句“最好在夏初时就对车子的冷却系统进行保养”，可知 B 项“夏天即将来临时”为正确答案。

30. B 事实细节题。由最后一部分可知，保养车子有两个益处：延长寿命与确保自己与他人的安全。故 B 项为正确答案。

### Task3

31. a bank account

(细节题。由第二段可知，很多房东喜欢直接通过银行账户收取房租。)

32. cheaper

(细节题)由第三段可知，如果直接通过银行账户支付诸如电话、煤气、水电等账单，你可能支付较少的钱。)

33. cash machines

(细节题。由第四段可知，你可以很容易地从柜员机上提取现金。)

34. UK

(细节题。由第五段可知，一般来说，用英国账户比用信用卡支付或从外国银行取现金省钱。)

35. pay

(细节题。由全文最后一句可知，如果你在英国工作，一些雇主会要求你开一个英国银行账户，这样才能获得

你的工资)

#### Task4

##### 36. faster and easier

(细节题。由第一段可知,在线快速工资表软件可以使得支付工资更快更轻松。)

##### 37. accounting

(细节题。由第二段第二句可知,在线快速工资表软件能帮助组织会计程序。)

##### 38. checking accounts

(细节题。由第四段第一句可知,公司将所有员工的工资直接存入他们各自在美国银行的存款账户即可支付工资。)

##### 39. computer

(细节题。由第四段最后一句可知,可以在公司电脑上打印工资单。)

##### 40. visit www.bank of fametica.com

(细节题。由最后一句可知,要联系金融中心可以通过拨打 1-888-6000-40000 或访问 [www.bank of fametica.com](http://www.bank of fametica.com) 网站)

### Part III Translation English into Chinese

#### 41 答案 C

解析 B 项是 1.5 分选项,将 qualified service personnel.“合格的维修人员”误译为“专门维修点”,并漏译了 anything。D 项是 1 分选项,将 servicing“维修”误译为“联系”增译了“按此地址”且漏译了 anything 和 qualified A 项是 0.5 分选项,将 go wrong with“出现故障”误译为“(人)不会使用”,增译了“务必”“咨询”漏译了 servicing。C 项为 2 分译文。

#### 42 答案 B

解析 A 项是 1.5 分选项,将 popular“受欢迎”译为“十分畅销”不够准确,将 remands increasing“需求增加”误译为“供不应求”,并漏译了 both at home and abroad。D 项是 1 分选项,将 are popular both at home and abroad“在国内外很受欢迎”误译为“打入国际市场”,“需求量提高”本身也不准确。C 项是 0.5 分选项,将原句完全理解错误,增译了“质量提高、价格下降”,漏译了 abroad、remand s increasing 和 year by year。B 项为 2 分译文。

#### 43 答案 A

解析 B 项是 1.5 分选项,将 should be in use“应该启用”误译为“已经启用”,增译了“逐渐”。A 项为 2 分译文。

#### 44 答案 D

解析 A 项是 1.5 分选项,将 the training school“培训学校”误译为“学校培训情况”,漏译了 other 和 more。C 项是 1 分选项,将 the training school“培训学校”误译为“培训工作”,增译了“需要”“宣传”。B 项是 0.5 分选项,将原句意思完全理解错误,“已有所了解”和“没必要再索取信息”均属乱译。D 项为 2 分译文。

#### 45. [参考译文]

当你聘请设计师时,直接聘请他们,这样你的钱就可以直接付给他们,而不是给一些服务型企业。我们公司提供免费的文件服务。我们有收费较低的设计师的名单。他们收费的起步价在 50 美元左右,并且包括全部费用!发送邮件给我们,我们将会迅速为您找一位设计师。我们不收取任何费用。你可以直接付钱给你选择的服务提供者。

### Part IV Writing

Memo

Date

(1) June 15, 2014

To

(2) All the staff From

(3) Department Office

Subject

(4) Annual department picnic

CC

(5) HR Department Message

Our company is going to hold the annual department picnic on July 1. We will provide all the food and beverage, as well as attractive prizes. Your spouses and children will also be welcomed. All the staff members are required to tell us before June 25 whether you will take part in the picnic or not and how many people you are going to bring with you. You can call 555-2345 to contact the secretary.

## 2020 届湖北省普通专升本英语模拟试卷（二）答案解析

### Part I Vocabulary & Structure

#### 1. 答案 B

解析本题考查介词的用法句意：如果你需要更多的信息，请通过电话或电子邮件与我们联系。by telephone or email 意为“通过电话或发电子邮件的方式”。故 B 项为正确答案。

#### 2. 答案 B

解析本题考查动词短语的意义。句意：总经理已经保证亲自调查此事。look into 意为“调查（何题或罪行）”。故 B 项为正确答案。get up 意为“起床，起立”。see off 意为“送行”。put on 意为“穿上，上演”。

#### 3. 答案 C

解析本题考查单词的含义。句意：这份报告清晰地描绘了公司未来的发展。picture 本意是“照片、图片”，此句中意为“描绘”，与 clear 构成搭配，意为“清晰的描绘”，符合句意。故 C 项为正确答案。

#### 4 答案 C

解析本题考查动词词组的用法。句意：报告交给我之前，请仔细检查一下。go over 意为“检查”，与 report 能构成搭配且符合原句的意思。故 C 项为正确答案。turn to 有“查阅”之意，但通常与 page 连用，意为“翻到某一页”。bring about 意为“引起，导致”。put up 意为“建造竖起”。

#### 5. 答案 D

解析本题考查动词时态的用法。句意：到下月底，我们将建成这座桥。由时间状语 by the end of next month 可判断，句子需要使用将来完成时，强调将来某个时间点之前已经完成的动作。故 D 项为正确答案。A 项是现在进行时，表示正在发生的动作或状态，B 项是现在完成时，表示过去发生的动作对现在造成的影响。C 项是过去将来时，表示从过去的某个时间看将来要发生的动作或存在的状态。

#### 6. 答案 B

解析本题考查的是强调句的用法。句意：去年，就是在琼森的旅馆召开了那次商务会职“It is/was + 强调部分 + that/who...”结构可用干强调主语、宾语和状语。但是只有在强调部分为人且为句子的主语时才使用 who 作为连

词。其他情况下都使用 that。故 B 项为正确答案。C、D 项可用千引导主语从句、表语从句和宾语从句等 在从句中充当主语或宾语，但都不用千强调句。

#### 7. 答案 A

解析本题考查形容词的意义。句意：很高兴地告知您，您预定的传真机已到货。由句子中的 order 判断，句子可能想表达“定购的东西到了”之意。只有 available 有“能提供的、有货的”之意。故 A 项为正确答案” convenient 意为“方便的”。wonderful 意为“美好的”。important 意为“重要的”。

#### 8. 答案：A

考点：动词-ing 短语作定语

说明：此题考查动词-ing 短语作定语的使用。此句中，doing business 作定语修饰 over30 foreign companies。A) doing 是答案。

#### 9 答案：D

考点：同位语从句

说明：原题目不完整，应改为 Mike has already put forward his suggestion ( )a production plan should be completed next week. A.whom B.what C.which D.that

此题考查英语同位语从句的使用。一个名词（或其他形式）对另一个名词或代词进行解释或补充说明，这个名词（或其他形式）就是同位语。除了用名词之外，也可以用从句的形式表示。此题中 a production plan should be completed next week 是 his suggestion 的同位语，应该用 that 引导，D)that 是正确答案。

#### 10 答案 B

考点：动词不定式

说明：此题考查英语动词+宾语+WH 一词+动词不定式的使用。tell some one how to do something 是常用的动词句型，答案是 B) to operate 。

#### 11 答案：A

解析：本句意思为“在十年间，在外语教学领域\_\_了很多新的方法”，根据语义选择 A adopted "v. 采用（某种方法）”，B adapt 为“V. 适应”，C alarm 额定为“V. 使惊恐，使担心”，D aided “v. 援助，帮助”。Adopt 和 adapt 为形近词，注意区分含义。

#### 12 答案：B

解析：选项四个词意思相近，A. presume 指（基于某种可能性进行）假定，假设，B. assume 指（无证据）假设（某件事为真），C. suppose 认为，推断，D. guess 估计，猜测。根据句中“which is not necessarily true”（并不一定是真的），可以得知前者是一种无证据的猜测，因此选 B。

#### 13 答案：B

解析：本句意思为“多国外国投入到饥荒地区”，经常与 foreign 搭配的是 foreign aid（外国援助），因此选 B. aid, 指“救援物资”，包括金钱食物等，A. assistant 是“助手”，C. help “帮助，援助”，侧重千帮助的动作，D. favor 指“善行，好事”。

#### 14. 答案：D

解析：根据本题语境，“我不需要任何帮助，但是我\_\_\_\_\_你的邀请”，选 D appreciate "v. 感激，感谢”，A approve "v. 赞成，同意”，B appeal "v. 呼吁，恳求”，C apply "v. 申请”，一般用 apply for/to sth。

#### 15. 答案：B

解析：be worthy of mention 是固定语，意思是“值得一提”。

#### 16. 答案：B

解析：本题考查 belong to 的用法，意思是属于，通常物做主语，不用被动语态。

17. 答案：B

解析：在表示通知，告示或者指示牌上写着某些字的时候，用“read”。

18. 答案：A

解析：本题主语为 all,当 all 表示抽象含义时，为单数。那么 all 和做之间是被动的关系，所以要用被动语态。

19. 答案：D

解析：本题考查被动语态，词组的原形为 take good care of, 所以当 good care 提前做主语后，词组剩下的部分都要保留。

20. 答案：C

解析：通过 1937 年可知事情发生在过去，用一般过去时。break out 表示爆发，不用被动语态。

## Part II Reading Comprehension

### Task 1

1. 答案 B

解析：从第一部分第一条 “Once the flight ticket has been issued, the name on the ticket cannot be changed”. 可知。

2. 答案 C

解析：从第一部分第三条 “If any problems arise before or during your trip, you must call our booking office right away.” 可以看出，遇到问题，应立即致电订票处。

23. 答案 C

解析：从第一部分第四条 “There are times when we are unable to confirm a booking. In that case we will attempt to reach you by phone and email. You must call us back within 48 hours or we may not be able to offer you the booking price.” 可看出当机票签订无法确认时，将会被电话或者邮件联系。

24. 答案 B

解析：从第二部分第一条 “If you change your booking, airlines may charge a fee—\$150-\$200.” 可以看出，如需更改机票，将收取 150 到 200 美元的费用。

25. 答案 A

解析：从第三部分第二条 “You may apply part of your ticket price towards future travel (for a limited time, usually a year).” 可以看出，依据退票规定，您可以申请将退票金额部分用于今后购买机票。

### Task 2

26. B 事实细节题。由第一段第三句可知，购买车险时应先研究。故 B 项为正确答案。A、C 项并非购买车险的具体步骤之一。D 项并未提及。

27. B 事实细节题。由文章第二段的后半部分可知，研究的目的是为了所购车险符合自己的需求。故 B 项为正确答案。A 项表述与原文中“每个险种都有其优缺点”不符。C、D 项都没有提及。

28. C 事实细节题。文章第三段提到“车险中被忽略的一部分是用来支付医疗费用的”。故 C 项为正确答案。A、B、D 项没有提及。

29. D 事实细节题。由第四段可知，影响的两个因素分别是个人喜好和购险经历，故 D 项为正确答案。A、B、C 项在文中均未提及。此外，文中的 these 并不是指“险种的优缺点”，而是“购险的选择”(choices)。

30. C 主旨大意题。这篇文章主要向读者介绍了购买车险的三个步骤：研究、决定及购买，借以说明购险并不是件轻松的事情。全文的重点在于对购险目的、险金中的医疗费用及险种选择的叙述。C 项能将全文主要内容都包括

在内，故为正确答案。A项只是文中第三段的部分内容，并不能用来概括全文的内容。文章中并未提及车险的优点，只在第四段提到各种车险都有优缺点，故D项也予以排除。B项未被提及。

### Task 3

#### Communication Training Program

(细节题。由 subject 可知，这是一次沟通训练项目。)

32. online

(细节题。由第一段第三句可知，这次的沟通训练项目是在线的。)

33. friendly

(细节题。由第一段第一句可知，清晰、友好及高效的沟通是十分重要的。)

34. customer-friendly

(细节题 C 由第一段最后一句可知，公司要创造一种“客户友好型”的沟通。)

35. the Company's website

(细节题。由倒数第二段第一句可知，要登录网站并从组织中那里得到一份备忘录才可以注册。)

### Task 4

36. interviewing

(细节题。由第一段第一句可知，写此信的 目的是感谢桑普森先生昨天的面试。)

37. design engineer

(细节题。由第一段第一句可知，作者昨天面试的职位是设计师。)

38. XELL Company

(细节题。由第二段第一句可知，作者想要在 XELL 公司工作。)

39. opportunity/job/position/work

(细节题。由第三段第二句可知，作者想要在 XELL 工作的原因是，这里提供给了她想要的机会。)

40. 0811-8222-5555

(细节题。由第三段最后一句可知，若要联系作者可拨打 0811-8222-5555。)

### Part III Translation—English into Chinese

41 答案 C

解析 D 项是 1.5 分选项，把 purpose 误译为“方法”，把 learn about 误译为“吸引”。B 项是 1 分选项，把 purpose 误译为“范围”，将 learn about 误译为“向……学习”，不恰当地增加了“特别”的意思。A 项是 0.5 分选项，将 purpose 误译为“对象”，漏译了 learn from，增加了原文中没有出现的“周围的”之意，将 buy from 误译为“推销产品”。C 项为 2 分译文。

42 答案 B

解析 D 项是 1.5 分选项，没有翻译出 through。C 项是 1 分选项，没有理解三个状语为并列结构，此外将 through the Internet 误译为“上网”，在“拨打……电话”后漏译了“购买”一词。A 项是 0.5 分选项，同 C 项一样没有正确理解三个状语的并列关系，此外还无中生有地增译“报名”和“预约”两个意思，漏译了 gift cards 中“卡”的意思，将其误译为“礼品”。B 项为 2 分译文。

43 答案 C

解析 A 项是 1.5 分选项，将 reasonable prices 误译为“价廉”，将 enjoy popularity 误译为“找到销路”。D 项是 1 分选项，把 reasonable prices 误译为“价格高”，把 enjoy popularity 误译为“供不应求”，并且漏译了 be sure to 短语。B 项是 0.5 分选项，将包含原因的句子误译为转折结构，将 enjoy popularity 误译为“根本无法买到”，将 good quality 误译为“质量标准高”，并漏译了 be sure to。C 项为 2 分译文。

#### 44 答案 D

解析 C 项是 1.5 分选项。把 possess or develop 误译成“首先具有……从而养成……”；将过去分词修饰的名词短语拆分为“较高的素质”和“良好的服务态度”，A 项是 1 分选项，将从句误译为“不管是否做……”，将 possess 误译为“加强学习”，连词 or 误译为“并且”，不恰当地省略了 quality 一词。B 项是 0.5 分选项，首先误译了让步状语从句的内容，用泛指“人们”代替了具体的 hotel person，且将 possess or develop 误译为“提高……并改善……”，不恰当地增加了“文化（素质）”。D 项为 2 分译文。

#### 45. 参考译文

我们刚购进了一大批优质运动鞋，并且能以非常合理的价格向你们供货。我们确信，你们会对这些运动鞋满意。我们要提醒你们的是，近期内不大可能再有类似的价格。因此，我们希望你们能够抓住这次机会，盼早复。

### Part IV Writing

#### 【参考范文】

Reservation Form

Name: Wang Hong

Check in: June, 25th, 2012

Check out: June 29th, 2012

Room type: Single Room

Number of rooms reserved: 20

Payment: Cash

Tel. number: 010-79968090

Fax number: 010-79968090 Email: wanghong7080@163.com

Special Requests:

- 1) Altogether 20 people will attend the meeting and they will have three meals in the restaurant during their stay here.
- 2) All the rooms need to have internet access.
- 3) One conference room with equipments like a computer and a projector should be ready for rent from 26th to 28th, June.

## 2020 届湖北省普通专升本英语模拟试卷（三）答案解析

### 1. 【答案】C

【解析】本题考查副词词义的辨别。句意：史密斯先生过去抽烟很厉害，但最近他已戒掉了。题中的转折词 but 提示史密斯先生之前“抽烟很厉害”。选项中只有 heavily 可以表达“大量”的意思。故 C 项为正确答案。

2. 【答案】A

【解析】本题考查强调句型的用法。句意：“就是在两年前他妹妹成为了医生。” It" was + 被强调的部分 + that + 原句其他部分”为强调句句型，强调说话人的意愿。故 A 项为正确答案。where 和 what 都不能在强调句中使用。who 虽然可用于强调句中，但一般用于强调人。

3. 【答案】D

【解析】本题考查习惯搭配的用法。句意：下一次董事会议将集中讨论员工的利益问题。focus on 是习惯搭“配意为集中千，关注”。故 D 项为正确答案。

4. 【答案】C

【解析】本题考查固定搭配。句意：我们支持这个观点，即经营管理不善将导致企业破产。句中的 poor ““management 与 business failure 很明显存在因果关系，而 lead to 意为导致，引起。故 C 项为正确答案。break up 意为破碎，分裂。take in 意为欺骗，通常使用其被动形式。Put off 意为推迟，拖延。

5. 【答案】B

【解析】本题考查动词词组的搭配。句意：在他看来，生活的成功主要取决于我们与他人相处的关系如何。由句意可知，depend on “取决于”为正确答案。Keep on 继续做。Insist on 坚持做。Spend+时间/金钱+on sth.为常见搭配，意为“在.....上花时间/金钱”。

6. 【答案】C

【解析】本题考查动词短语的意义。句意：我们必须想出一个解决这个问题的新方法。由句意可知 C 项为正确答案。tell about 讲述。put out 扑灭。take over 接手。

7. 【答案】C

【解析】状语从句

说明：此题考查英语让步状语从句关联词语的使用。根据句意，从句需要用 although 表示“让步”，所以 C although 是答案。as if 的意思是“好像，似乎”；so that 的意思是“以便，为了”；until 的意思是“直到”。

8. 【答案】C

【考点】词汇意思

【解析】此题考查英语词汇意思的辨别。business 的意思是“商业，生意，事务”；trade 的意思是“贸易，行业”；position 的意思是“职位”；operation 的意思是“经营，手术”。四个选项中，只有 C 符合句意，是答案。

9. 【答案】C

【考点】短语意思

【解析】此题考查英语短语意思的辨别。taken off 的意思是“脱去（衣服等）”；put up 的意思是“（被）建造，张贴”；sold out 的意思是“卖完”；got off 的意思是“离开”。根据句意，答案是 C sold out。

10. 【答案】A

【考点】词汇搭配

【解析】此题考查英语词汇的搭配。in need of something 是固定搭配，意思是“需要某事物”。答案是 A in。

11. 【答案】C

解析：Sylvie 一直期待她能嫁给一个和她有同样的人，A climate 气候，B surroundings 环境，一般指实实在在存在的环境，C background 出身背景，经历，D environment（影响个体或事物行为或发展的）环境；客观环境，因此选 C

12. 【答案】D

解析：根据文中语境，论文的作者需要提交一份关于他研究论文的 200 字的，因此可知，应该是“摘要”，D

abstract, A edition 版本, 版次, B editorial 社评, 评论, C article 文章。

13. 【答案】C

解析: 根据语境, 公司需要削减其广告\_\_, A allowance 补贴, 补助, B reservation 预定, 预约, C budget 预算, D finance 资金, 金融。根据常识, 可知应该是“削减预算“, 因此选 C

14. 【答案】D

解析: 人工智能 是一个固定说法, artificial intelligence, 即 AI, 因此选 D artificial。A unreal 奇异的, 虚幻的, B man-made 人造的, 非天然的, C fake 假的。

15. 【答案】C

解析: 破产, 固定搭配 go bankrupt。这里 用过去式, 因此选 C went bankrupt

16. 【答案】C

解析: happen 表示发生, 通过 last week 可知, 事情发生在过去, 用一般过去时。

17. 【答案】B

解析: 一般疑问句用 will 提问, 表将来时, 就用 will 对应的形式回答。

18. 【答案】A

解析: 本题考查的是情态动词表推测的用法。对现在的推测用情态动词+动词原型。本句意思是: 她不可能生病, 因为刚才我看到她打网球。此处语气肯定, 所以排除选项 D may not (可能不)。C 选项 mustn't 表示禁止做., 故选 A 表示不可能。

19. 【答案】C

解析: 通过后文可知能把书保留到下周, 所以现在 没必要换, 这里的 need not 表示没有必要。

20. 【答案】A

解析: 本题考查非谓语动词 句式, 后悔过去的错误是无用的, it is no use doing sth.

21. 【答案】A

【解析】从第一段 “When you speak on the telephone, you cannot use your facial expression, eye contact or gestures to help communicate your message. Your voice must do the job.”可以看出, 打电话时传递信息的关键因素是声音。

【答案】D

【解析】从第三段第二句 “Speak louder when giving important information.”可以看出, 传递重要信息时要加大声音。

23. 【答案】D

【解析】从第四段 “Speak slowly enough so that the listener has a chance to understand your message without your having to repeat it. Keep in mind that as you speak the other person may be taking notes.”可以看出, 应尽量放慢语速, 因为对方可能在记笔记。

24. 【答案】A

【解析】从第四段第三句 “Pronunciation is the correct way to say a word to avoid mispronouncing words, you may wish to check the pronunciation of unfamiliar words in the dictionary before you use them.”可以看出, 为了避免发音错误, 你应该提前在字典中弄清一些单词的读音。

25. 【答案】B

【解析】最后一段第三句 “You may need to repeat or spell words that are unusual or easy to be misunderstood.”可以看出, 需要拼读的是不常用的单词。

26. D 事实细节题。由文章第一段第三句“拨打电话或访问我们的在线服务中心”可知, 电脑出现故障时可以访

问在线服务中心。故 D 项为正确答案。

27. C 事实细节题。通过第二段第一句“大多数生产商只保修因材料质量导致的电脑问题。”可知，C 项为正确答案。

28. B 事实细节题。第三段第二句明确表示“您在注册使用维护中心的工具时需要它”，其中，句子主语 it 代指本段前一句的 receipt，故 B 项为正确答案。

29. A 推理概括题。根据文章第四段第二句“使用附送的电脑维护中心 CD 来保证您的照片、音乐、邮件和财务记录的安全”，可推知 A 项为正确选项。B、C、D 项中的 email, photos 和 music 虽在文中均出现过，但它们只是作为保护的内容提及过。

30. C 细节推理题。文章第六段第一句提到“若因同一问题维修三次，我们予以更换”。故 C 项为正确选项。

31. 【答案】C

【考点】具体信息

【解析】此题考查熟悉新车的零部件，车主应该做什么。第 1 段最后一句讲 if you're unfamiliar with the parts, you have to read through the owner's instructions carefully. (你如果不熟悉零部件，必须仔细阅读用户说明书)，答案是 C。

32. 【答案】A

【考点】具体信息

【解析】先找到此题针对哪一段。第 2 段第 2 句讲 Having them checked regularly can reduce the risks of accidents. (定期检查刹车可减少事故风险)。them 指的是上句中的 the brakes, 答案是 A to avoid accidents。

33. 【答案】A

【考点】具体信息

【解析】此题针对第 2 段中的 Replace the engine oil when recommended. (按照建议更换机油) 提问。答案明显是 A replace the engine oil as recommended。

34. 【答案】B

【考点】具体信息

【解析】此题针对第 2 段最后一句提问，You'd better get the cooling system serviced before the start of summer. (你最好在夏季来临前就对冷却系统进行保养)，答案是 B summer is coming。

35. 【答案】B

【考点】具体信息

【解析】此题针对文章最后一段提问，Good servicing can not only extend the life of your newborn baby, but also ensure your safety, and the safety of those who share the road with you. (良好的保养不仅能延长新生儿的寿命，即你车子的寿命，还能确保你的安全，以及那些与你使用同一道路的人的安全)，the life of your newborn baby 是比喻，实际上是指“新车的使用寿命”。答案是 B to extend its life and ensure safety。

36. software development

(根据原文第一段中的“Apteryx Ltd. is a software development company.”可知，几维有限公司是一家软件开发公司。因此此处应填入 software development。)

37. medical

(根据原文第一段中的“Our current products include ...for independent medical practices and large medical suppliers...”可知我们现有的产品主要售往国内外独立的医疗事务所和大型医疗设备供应商。因此此处应填入 medical。)

38. creative

(根据原文第二段中的“Apteryx Ltd. believes in a fun and creative company culture...”可知, 几维有限公司坚持有趣并富有创造力的企业文化。因此此处应填入 creative。)

#### 39. training

(根据原文第二段中的“...to is employees including in-service career training.”可知, 几维有限公司会为员工提供在职培训。因此此处应填入 training。)

#### 40. retirement

(根据原文第二段中的“...great retirement package, and are relaxed atmosphere”可知, 几维有限公司也会为员工提供优厚的退休金以及轻松的氛围。因此此处应填入 retirement。)

#### 41. 【答案】C

【解析】D项是1.5分选项, 体现了with作状语的结构, 但把are changing误译为“也会改变”。A项是1分选项, 错误地理解了句子中的因果关系, 将“油价格上涨导致的购车者想法的改变”误解为“购车者的想法导致燃油价格的上涨”。B项是0.5分选项, 不仅将原文中的fuel prices going up误译为“价格的涨落”, 还将changing their idea当作“改变购车族人群的构成”。C项为2分译文。

#### 42. 【答案】D

【解析】A项是1.5分选项, 把have to误译成“当务之急”, 属于过度翻译。B项是1分选项, 不仅没有译出have to的意思, 还将raise the quality of your product误译为“质量第一”。C项是0.5分选项, 没有反映出原文中的因果关系。D项为2分译文。

#### 43. 【答案】C

【解析】B项是1.5分选项, 漏译了efficiently, 把making...an essential channel误译为“使...变得重要”。A项是1分选项, 漏译了主句中的their ability, 将to handle orders误译为“得到指示”, 将efficiently误译为“明确的”, 此外还将making sth. 结构误译为“把...建立起来”。D项是0.5分选项, 从宏观层面看, 将表示先后顺序的状语当作目的状语, 从微观层面看没有正确理解单词ensure, orders、online和essential之意, 更漏译channel一词。C项为2分译文。

#### 44. 【答案】B

【解析】D项是1.5分选项, 用“签字生效”来翻降signing a contract尚可接受, 但不足之处在于将understanding误译为“解释”。C项是1分选项, 忽视了it is necessary to...的意思。A项是0.5分选项, 同时犯了D、C项的错误, 将understanding误译为“讨论”, 并将句子结构it is necessary to...误译为“是否有必要”。B项为2分译文。

#### 45. 【参考译文】

感谢你昨天来我们办公室参加求职面试。对于你的申请, 我们将在两周内把我们的决定告诉你。我们希望你知道, 我们将会认真考虑你的申请。如果由于某些原因, 我们这次未能给你一个岗位, 我们会把你的申请记录在案, 等职位空缺时, 我们会立即通知你。

### Part IV Writing

#### 【审题构思】

在撰写电话留言时需要注意以下几个要点:

电话留言中特别需要注意不要混淆来电者、接电话并留言者和留言的读者这三方。

在留言中首先要告知来电者是谁, 再把电话内容转告清楚。就本电话留言而言, 共有三层意思:

- 1) 取消原有会面及取消的理由;
- 2) 新的会面时间及见面原因;
- 3) 表述期待得到电话回复。

电话留言因为发生在留言被看到之前，因此一般使用过去时、过去完成时和过去将来时。

Message:

Mr. Peter Margin from APP CO.Ltd. called this morning. He said that he would leave for New York next Monday and would not be able to meet you as appointed. Therefore he hoped to see you at 9:30 this Friday morning if you are available and discuss about the cooperation between the two companies. You are expected to call back ASAP after reading this message.

Signed by: Linda Wang

【参考范文】

【闪光词汇】

leave for 动身去

be available 有空的

call back 回电

## 2020 届湖北省普通专升本英语模拟试卷（四）答案解析

### 1. 【答案】D

【解析】本题考查 so...that... 结构。句意：他说得如此之快，以至千我们都没怎么听明白。so...that... 意为“如此... 以至千.....”，位千 so 后面的成分通常是导致 that 从句结果的原因。故 D 项为正确答案。

### 2. 【答案】D

【解析】本题考查动词搭配。句意：你要是不努力，别指望我帮你。expect sb. to do sth. 为固定用法，意为“期望某人做某事”。故 D 项为正确答案。

### 3. 【答案】B

【解析】本题考查动词的用法。句意：把早餐送到您的房间，您需要支付额外费用。由句意可知，本句的场景应是旅馆，只有 serve“供应（饭菜）”符合句意。故 B 项是正确答案。

### 4. 【答案】A

【解析】本题考查 -ing 分词作定语的用法。句意：近年来，有超过 30 家外企在本市开展业务。根据句意，do business 的主语应该是 foreign companies，两者是主动关系，所以应该使用 -ing 形式。故 A 项为正确答案。

### 5. 【答案】D

【解析】本题考查连词的用法。句意：除非你有信用卡，否则一些公司不会将车租给你。由句子的两个部分“不将车租给你”和“拥有信用卡”可以判断，两个部分之间是条件关系，而四个选项中只有 unless 可用来引导条件状语从句，相当千 if not，故 D 项为正确答案。Where 经常引导地点状语或用千引导定语从句时常充当从句中的地点状语。because 常用千引导原因状语从句。since 引导状语从句，意为“自从.....以来”或者“既然”。

### 6. 【答案】D

考点：同位语从句

【解析】此题考查英语同位语从句引导词的使用。the idea 后的 our staff should use recycled paper to save

money 是完整的同位语从句，从句不缺意思，不缺成分，需要用 that 来引导。答案是 D) that。

7. 【答案】D

【考点】动词时态

【解析】此题考查英语将来完成时的使用。将来完成时的构成是 will+ have+ 动词的过去分词，用来表示在将来某一时间以前已经完成或一直持续的动作，经常与“by+将来时间”连用。答案是 D)will have completed。

8. 【答案】B

【考点】短语意思

【解析】此题考查英语短语意思的辨别。in case of 的意思是“假如，如果发生”；as a result of 的意思是“由...的结果”；in addition to 的意思是“除了...之外”；on the basis of 的意思是“在...的基础上”。B 符合句意，是答案。

9. 【答案】D

【考点】短语意思

【解析】此题考查英语短语意思的辨别。As long as 的意思是“只要”；As well as 的意思是“除...之外（也），既...又”；As soon as 的意思是“一...就”；As far as 的意思是“远至，到...程度”。as far as I'm concerned

的意思是“就我而言”。答案是 D)As far as。

10. 【答案】B

【考点】词汇搭配

【解析】题考英语词汇意思和搭配。四个选项都是动词。Keep on 搭配，意思是“继续”；depend 与 on 搭配，意思是“取决于，依靠”；insist 与 on 搭配，意思是“坚持，坚持认为”。根据句意，答案是 B)depends。

11. 答案：D

解析：本题意为“我们已经，利率会进一步下降”，根据语义可知，后半句为一种未发生的事，因此选 D anticipated 预料，预期；其它选项 A appreciated 欣赏，感激；B participated 参加，参与；C appropriate “v. 占用，挪用；adj. 合适的，恰当的”。

12 答案：A

解析：本题意为“专家警告，不要把嚼烟当成抽烟的\_\_”。A substitute 替代品，代替品，B successor 继任者，接替者，C relief 宽慰，解脱，D succession 交替，更迭。根据题意可知选 A substitute。

13 答案：A

答案解析：the instant=as soon as 一.....就，for an instant 短时间，瞬间，刹那间；in an instant 立刻，马上 on the instant 立刻，马上，说时迟，那时快。根据句意，这里应该选择 A the instant。

14 答案：A

解析：从语义来说这个句子的意思质优选 whichever 才是通顺的，即“无论哪一位运动员获得最高得分，他（她）就是获胜者”另外，whichever 在句子中作定语，限定 player, B 选项 whomever 为宾格，不可以做定语。

15. 答案：D

解析：此题考察与“数酰少”相关的词义辨析。A minimum 最小量，最小值，B lack 缺少，缺乏，C scarcity 不足，缺乏，D minority 少数，少数派。题中语境是说，女性在董事会中人数是少数的，因此选 D minority。

16 答案 C

解析：本题考查 can't help doing sth. 表示情不自禁做某事。

17. 答案 C

解析: remember doing sth. = remember having done sth. 表示忘记做过某事。

18. 答案 A。

解析: 此题考查非谓语动词, she 和动词 lie 之间是主动关系, 并且表示进行。

19. 答案 D.

解析: 本题考查 imagine doing sth.

20. 答案 B

解析: 本题考查独立主格。独立主格中动词用非谓语动词形式, 天气和允许之间是主动关系, 所以用 ing 形式。

21. B 事实细节题。由题干中的“first paragraph”和“share house”可定位到第一段第一句。该句指出合租房屋的优势是省钱。故 B 项为正确答案。

22. A 事实细节题。由题干中“housemate”可定位到第二段第二句。该句提到要仔细思考适合你的性格的人。故 A 项为正确答案。

23. D 细节事实题。由题干中“collect rent”可定位到文章第一个星号处。该句指出, 在支付或收取房租时应该索要或给予发票。故 D 项为正确答案。

24. C 事实细节题。由题干中“problem”可定位到文章第二个星号处。此处提到, 如果可能的话, 和室友面对面地解决问题。故 C 项为正确答案。

25. C 主旨大意题。文章第一段就表明与人合租房屋省钱, 而且好处多。接下来文章强调了两点, 一是选择合适的合租人, 而且设定一些必要的准则。最后, 文章推荐了一个网站以便了解更多合租房屋的信息。故 C 项为正确答案。

26. B 事实细节题。由第一段第一句可知, 营销人员最重要的是理解他人。故 B 项为正确答案。

27. A 事实细节题。由文章第二段第二句话可知, 女性喜欢谈论时装。故 A 项为正确答案。由第二段第一句话可知, 男性喜欢运动, 故 B 项可能是使男性感觉自在的方式。C、D 项都没有提及。

28. D 事实细节题。文章第二段末尾提到“如果你问很多问题, 并设法让他们给以肯定的回答, 那么他们会习惯于对你的问题做出肯定的答复”。由此可知, D 项为正确答案。

29. C 事实细节题。由最后一段倒数第三句可知, 过度利用买者是不公平的, 故 C 项为正确答案。文章后一段虽提到有些销售人员为达目的不择手段, 但是作者并不赞同这一观点和做法, 因此 A 项错误。B 项并未提及。作者虽然提到销售人员有可能不择手段, 但只是一些销售人员, 因此 D 项也无法从文中推测出来。

30. B 推理判断题。由最后一段倒数第二句可知, 营销领域的一些人为达目的会不择手段, 故 B 项为正确答案。A 项与文章第二段第一句话的内容正好相反, 喜欢体育运动的是男性而不是女性。C 项可从我们的经验当中推知, 但这并不是文中出现的观点。D 项在文章中没有出现。

31. Manager

(细节题。由原文“To”后的内容可知, Katherine Anderson 是公司的经理。)

32. Stephen Black

(细节题。由原文“From”后的内容可知, Stephen Black 来自销售部门。)

33. four/4(years)

(细节题。由正文第二段第一句可知, Stephen Black 已经在公司工作四年了。)

34. knowledge and skills

(细节题。由正文第三段第一句可知, Stephen Black 要去一个完全不同的环境发展自己的知识与技能)

35. Saturday, 18th December

(细节题。由正文第三段第二句可知, Stephen Back 希望可以在 12 月 18 日离开。)

36. a bank account

(细节题。由第二段可知, 很多房东喜欢直接通过银行账户收取房租。)

37. cheaper

(细节题。由第三段可知, 如果直接通过银行账户支付诸如电话、煤气、水电等账单, 你可能支付较少的钱。)

38. cash machines

(细节题。由第四段可知, 你可以很容易地从柜员机上提取现金。)

39. UK

(细节题。由第五段可知, 一般来说, 用英国账户比用信用卡支付或从外国银行取现金省钱。)

40. pay

(细节题。由全文最后一句可知, 如果你在英国工作, 一些雇主会要求你开一个英国银行账户, 这样才能获得你的工资。)

41 答案: B—2 分; C—1 分; A—0 分

I believe my education background and experience in team work fit in nicely with the job requirements.

说明: education background 的意思是“教育背景, 学历, 飞 teamwork 的意思是“团队工作”; fit in nicely with 的意思是“非常符合, 与... 适合”。b 译出了句子的全部内容, 得 2 分; C 与原文意思有出入, 得 1 分; A 与原文意思完全不符, 不得分。

42 答案: C—2 分; A—1 分; B—0 分

The department head does not believe that this is the right way to deal with the problem.

说明: 本句中, deal with the problem 的意思是“解决这个问题”; a does not believe that... 一般可译成“认为... 不”。

C 译出了句子的全部内容, 得 2 分; A 中 deal with the problem 译成“发现问题”“不对”, the right way 译成“唯一途径”“也不对”, 得 1 分; B 与原文意思完全不符, 不得分。

43 答案: C—2 分; B—1 分; A—0 分

We need a recommendation letter from your former employer before we can give you a definite answer.

说明: recommendation letter 的意思是“推荐信”; your former employer 的意思是你以前的雇主 / 老板; a definite answer 的意思是“明确的答复”。C 译出了句子的全部内容, 得 2 分; B 部分的意思与原文有出入, 得 1 分; A 与原文意思完全不符, 不得分。

44 答案: C—2 分; A—1 分; B—0 分

We are thinking about how to ensure that our employees can work under the best possible conditions.

说明: 本句中, ensure 的意思是“确保”; under the best possible conditions 的意思是“在尽可能好的条件下”。C 译出了句子的全部内容, 得 2 分; A 的从句部分的译文与原文有出入, 得 1 分; B 与原文意思完全不符, 不得分。

45 原文与参考译文:

您建议把工具移到商店前部, 这个建议非常好。大家都认为, 这些工具现在更容易取到了。您这样的顾客对我们非常重要。我们成功的一个原因就是: 像您这样的客户肯花时间与我们分享好点子。我们感激您提的建议和对我们业务持续不断的支持。

#### Part IV Writing

## 【参考范文】

June, 19th, 2011

Dear Mr. John Brown.

Thank you very much for ordering the latest product of our company. The goods which you have ordered have been delivered, and you can pick them up in a week. Please give us a reply after receiving the goods.

The efforts you have made impress me a lot. Thanks again for your contact with us and we are looking forward to cooperating with you again very soon.

Yours sincerely,

Wang Ming

Sales Manager

## 2020 届湖北省普通专升本英语模拟试卷（五）答案解析

### Part I Vocabulary & Structure Section A

#### 1. 【答案】D

【解析】本题主要区分形近短语的意思。句意：看到这条信息就给我回个电话。as soon as 意为“一……就……”。故 D 项为正确答案。as well as 意为“也，又”。as early as 意为“早在某个时候”。as far as 意为“直到，远至”。

#### 2. 【答案】D

【解析】被邀请参加这个聚会，我感到非常荣幸。invite 的用法为 invite sb to (do) sth, 但选项中 invite 均无宾语，故推断“我”是被邀请的，要使用被动态。句中的 it 为形式主语，真正的主语是 to be invited to this party。

#### 3. 【答案】C

【解析】本题考查 if 引导的非现实条件句的用法。句意：要是以前投入了更多资金，我们就已经在亚洲建起一家工厂了。在 if 引导的非现实条件句中，为了表达与过去的事实相反，从句用过去完成时，主句的谓语用 would/could/might have done。故 C 项为正确答案。

#### 4. 【答案】C

【考点】状语从句

【说明】此题考查英语让步状语从句关联词语的使用。根据句意，从句需要用 although 表示“让步”，所以 C 项 although 是答案。as if 的意思是“好像，似乎”；so that 的意思是“以便，为了”；until 的意思是“直到”。

#### 5. 【答案】D

【解析】本题考查 as...as 结构的用法。句意：就我而言，重要的是先得到一份工作。as far as sb. be concerned 为固定用法，意为“就某人而言”，故 D 项为正确答案。as long as 意为“只要”；well as 意为“既……又……”和“……一样”；as soon as 意为“一……就……”。

#### 6. 【答案】A

【考点】词汇搭配

【说明】此题考查英语词汇的搭配。be responsible for something 的意思是“对某事负责”。答案是 A) for。be responsible to somebody 的意思是“对某人负责”。

7. 【答案】A

【考点】词汇意思

【说明】此题考查英语词汇意思的辨别。四个选项都是动词。require 的意思是“需要，要求”；leave 的意思是“离开”；pay 的意思是“支付”；offer 的意思是“提供”。只有 A) requires 符合句意，是答案。在句中，which 引导定语从句，补充说明 a slow process。

8. 【答案】D

【考点】状语从句

【说明】此题考查英语条件状语从句关联词语的使用。unless 引导条件状语从句，意思是“除非，如果不...”。根据句意，答案是 D) unless。for, because 和 since 引导的是原因状语从句，since 也可引导时间状语从句。

9. 【答案】B

【考点】强调句型

【说明】本句是 It was/is...that 强调句，强调地点状语部分 in Jonson's hotel。答案是 B)that。

10. 【答案】B

【解析】本题考查固定搭配。句意：如果你想天黑前到达那里，那你就应该马上启程。at once 意为“立刻、马上”，符合句意。故 B 项正确。at times 有时，偶尔。in person 亲自，本人。in detail 详细地。

11. 【答案】B

解析：本题意为“它有三间漂亮的卧室，用精心挑选的布料装饰，并配有古董和松木。”A provided 提供。Provide sb with sth, B furnished 布置，装配，Coffer 提供，D equip 装备，furnish 指供给生活所必须的布置或装饰，B 项正确。

12. 【答案】B

解析：考察 means 的词组搭配，by no means 决不，一点也不，因此选 B。其他形式均不正确。

13. 【答案】B

“解析：根据题意，人类是唯一有能力说话和推理的动物，这是一个\_\_\_的事实”，A worthy 值得的，B universal 普遍存在的；广泛适用的，C virtual 实质上的，虚拟的，D authentic 真品的，真迹的。因此选 B。

14. 【答案】C

解析：本题考查与 down 有关的词组，根据题意，“据报道，紧急救援项目已经被”，A slowed down 减速，放慢（速度），B cut down 削减，缩短，C scaled down 减小（数量），缩小（范围或规模），D measured down 无此短语，根据题意可知，项目应该是范围或规模被缩小，因此选 C。

15. 【答案】C

解析：本题考查逻辑连接词，前文是“兰斯做他想做的”，后文是“他父母说什么”，A 独立地，独自地，B spite n. 恶意，怨恨，有词组 in spite of 不管，尽管，C regardless of 不管，不顾，D careless with 无此固定搭配，但可当“对.....粗心”之意，根据前后文逻辑，应该选 C。

16. 【答案】B

解析：see sh. doing sth. 表示看见某人正在做某事，用千被动语态变为 sh. be seen doing sth.

17. 【答案】C

解析：尽管缺钱，他的父母还是送他上了大学。lack 可作及物动词，它的逻辑主语是 his parents, 后面有 money 当它的宾语，主动关系使用 ing 形式，故 C 项正确。

18. 【答案】A

解析：本题考查非谓语动词作状语，Mr.Thomas 与 dig 之间是主动关系，所以用 ing 形式。

19. 【答案】A

解析：本题考查非谓语动词作定语，首先通过 by the end of this month 可知时间在将来，而 project 和 complete 之间是被动的关系，所以用不定式的被动语态。

20. 【答案】B

解析：本题考查 want doing 是主动表被动，相当于 sth. want to be done.

## Part II Reading Comprehension

### Task 1

21. 【答案】C

解析：事实细节题。根据题干中的“buy your first home”可定位至原文第一段。由第一段第二句“However, you should take care to plan well and understand the process to avoid any unexpected problems.”可知，第一次购买房子时需要先了解整个购买流程。故 C 项正确。

22. 【答案】B

【解析】事实细节题。由原文第三段第一句“First, think about what you need and what you want from your new home.”可知，买新房时首先需要考虑的就是自己的需求，故 B 项正确。

23. 【答案】D

【解析】事实细节题。根据题干中的“a mortgage advisor”可定位至原文第五段。由该段中的“you will normally need to contact a mortgage advisor to see how much money you can borrow.”可知，联系按揭咨询师是为了询问能贷多少款。故 D 项正确。

24. 【答案】A

【解析】事实细节题。由原文最后一段中的“Of course, there are lots of costs related to buying a home which may not be immediately clear to first time buyers.”可知，购房者第一次购买房子时，往往对购房相关的开销不是很清楚。故 A 项正确。

25. 【答案】D

【解析】主旨大意题。全文都是在介绍第一次买房子时需要注意的事项，以及作者对第一次购房者的一些建议，所以此篇文章是写给第一次买房的人。故 D 项正确。

### Task 2

26. 【答案】B

考点：具体信息

说明：根据 We are seeking an experienced purchasing officer for our Purchasing Department.（我们正在为我们的

采购部招聘一位有经验的采购员）答案是 B) A purchasing officer.（采购员）。

27. 【答案】D

考点：具体信息

说明：广告提到应聘者的多项条件，其中有 have a minimum 2 years of related experience, Grade 12 education（有至少两年的相关工作经验，受过 12 年级教育），对应的答案是 D) have at least 2 years of related experience。其他选项的条件在广告中都没有提及。

28. 【答案】A

考点：具体信息

说明：广告中有 a willingness to work occasional weekends and overtime（愿意偶尔周末工作和偶尔加班），因此，答案是 A) working overtime。

### Task3

29 答案 Colour Riche

解析：从第三段第二句“L'OREAL Paris's new product Colour Riche provides dozens of beautiful colours.”可以得到答案。

30 答案 95 yuan (\$11.5)

解析：从最后一句“Priced at 95 yuan (\$11.5) for each, ...”可以得到答案。

31 答案 intense emotion

解析：从第四段第二句“...deep purple lips hint intense emotion...”可以得到答案。

32 答案 sexy

解析：从第四段第二句“...bright red creates a both sexy and classical look.”可以得到答案。

33 答案 classical

解析：从第四段第二句“...bright red creates a both sexy and classical look.”可以得到答案。

### Task4

34.information

（题目问的是在谈生意之前，你首先需要准备的事情是什么？根据原文第一段中的“Gather as much information as you can before the business talk.”可知，谈生意前首先要收集尽可能多的信息。因此此处应填入 information。）

35.everything

（题目问的是在准备回答之前你应该做什么？根据原文第一段中的“Try and imagine everything that could possibly occur during the talk, and prepare a response.”可知，在准备回答之前要试想一下在谈判过程中可能会出现的所有事情，并准备好回答。因此此处应填入 everything。）

36.the other party

（题目问的是在谈生意时什么很重要？根据原文第二段第一句“It is important to be mentally present and willing to consider what the other party says”可知此处应填入 the other party。）

37.your thoughts

（题目问的是为什么作者鼓励你离开谈判现场一会儿？根据原文第二段中的“Feel free to walk away from the talk for a moment to collect your thoughts and reconsider your position.”可知，离开谈判现场一会儿可以让你梳理自己的思路并重新考虑自己的立场。因此此处应填入 your thoughts。）

38.miss something important

（题目问的是为什么快速做出决定不好？根据原文第二段中的“Responding too quickly might cause you to miss something important.”可知，太仓促地做出回应可能会让你漏掉一些重要信息。因此此处应填入 miss something important。）

### Part III Translation—English into Chinese

37.【答案】A

【解析】D项是1.5分选项，把convincing译为“说服人”尚可接受但将sell well误译为“卖出好价钱”。B项是1分选项，把convincing译为“人们相信广告”有失妥当；此外，误译了sell well。C项是0.5分选项，将if条件句译为让步状语从句；将convincing误译为“较差”；把sell well误解为“产品好”。A项为2分译文。

38. 【答案】B

【解析】C项是1.5分选项，将 a new branch 译作“新公司”不够清晰，把 on account of 误译为“为了适应”。A项是1分选项，错误地将句中的原因与结果倒置，将 a new branch 模糊地译作“新公司”，将 increase of trade with China 误译为“增开了在中国的贸易账户”，同时漏译了 rapid。D项是0.5分选项，将原因状语错误地理解为目的状语，并增译了“重新开设贸易账户”。B项为2分译文。

39. 【答案】D

【解析】B项是1.5分选项，convenience 误译为“容易”，而吸引女性的正是其“便捷”。C项是1分选项，不但增译了“现代”与“传统”的划分，还漏译了“便捷”一词。A项是0.5分选项，句中的 now 修饰的是 women，而不是 seems；句中的 more 是修饰 attracted 的程度，并不是指人数多少。D项为2分译文。

【答案】C

【解析】D项是1.5分选项，增译了“一直”，且原文中的“结束”应指经理提出主意后停止讨论，而不是结束时提出主意。A项是1分选项，忽视了 until 前后主从句发生的先后顺序，而且误将“经理的主意”当做讨论的对象。B项是0.5分选项，与原句内容出入最大，come up with 误译为“到会”，出现“，还增译“那个客户”，并将其视作“提出主意”的对象，其实却是对 customer service 的错误理解。C项为2分译文。

41 . 【参考译文】

女士们，先生们：我很高兴向你们介绍我们新上任的销售部经理王强先生。王先生是销售和营销方面的专家。过去的三年里，王先生在 JHS 公司任职。

今天他将向你们说明我们公司对各位的工作要求。在接下来的几天内，他将分别与各位讨论你们的月销售计划，并且准备回答你们可能提出的任何问题。

【参考范文】

December, 19th, 2010 Dear Sir/Madam,

Your ads in China Daily of December 10, 2010 says that BAC Company is looking for a Business Administration graduate to work as office secretary. I'd like to apply for this position.

As my enclosed resume shows, I am a recent graduate from Orient College with a major in Business Administration.

During my three years in Orient College, I have been actively involved in the acquiring of a series of practical skills and have obtained certificates.

I once worked part-timely in DDF Company for two years. During my work there, I got to know about office work and I am more skilled in operating a computer.

I look forward to an interview offer, proving myself as the best candidate for the position.

Yours sincerely,

Wang Lin